

Empowered by Innovation



## **NEC Storage Manager**

# Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual (GUI)



IS007-10E

© NEC Corporation 2001-2004 No part of the contents of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form without permission of NEC Corporation. The contents of this book may be modified without notice in the future.

## Preface

This manual describes how to perform the following by using the GUI (Graphical User Interface) on NEC Storage Manager clients:

- Configure the NEC Storage series disk array subsystem.
- Refer to the disk array configuration information.
- Remarks: The LD Administrator (ReallocationControl) and CachePartitioning are described in the "NEC Storage Manager LD Administrator User's Manual (IS037)" and "NEC Storage Manager Cache Partitioning User's Manual (IS038)", respectively, from the NEC Storage Manager Ver3.3.

It is also possible to use the CLI (Command Line Interface) to configure the disk array subsystem or refer to the configuration information. For details, refer to the "NEC Storage Manager Configuration Setting Tool User's Manual" (IS002).

As its readers, this manual is aimed at those who have professional knowledge of the disk array subsystem. For information on the disk array subsystem functions, refer to the "NEC Storage Manager User's Manual" (IS004) or "NEC Storage Manager User's Manual (UNIX)" (IS001) in accordance with your OS.

Refer to the "NEC Storage Manager Manual Guide" (IS901) for the overview of NEC Storage and the related manuals.

Remarks 1. This manual explains functions implemented by the following program products:

- NEC Storage Manager and NEC Storage BaseProduct
- NEC Storage AccessControl
- NEC Storage DynamicDataReplication
- NEC Storage ReallocationControl
- NEC Storage RemoteDataReplication
- 2. This manual is applicable to the program products of the following versions:
  - NEC Storage Manager Ver3.3
  - NEC Storage BaseProduct Ver3.3
- 3. The NEC Storage Manager is referred to as iSM or Storage Manager in the text of this manual. Also, the NEC Storage series disk array subsystem is referred to as a disk array.
- 4. The following descriptions in the text of this manual refer to the corresponding products.

Description	Corresponding Product	
Storage Manager	NEC Storage Manager	
AccessControl	NEC Storage AccessControl	
DynamicDataReplication	NEC Storage DynamicDataReplication	
ReallocationControl	NEC Storage ReallocationControl	
RemoteDataReplication	NEC Storage RemoteDataReplication	

5. The following descriptions in the text of this manual refer to the corresponding manuals.

Description	Corresponding Manual
User's Manual (UNIX)	NEC Storage Manager User's Manual (UNIX) (IS001)
User's Manual	NEC Storage Manager User's Manual (IS004)
Data Replication User's Manual (Function Guide)	NEC Storage Manager Data Replication User's Manual (Function Guide) (IS015)
Snapshot User's Manual (Function Guide)	NEC Storage Manager Snapshot User's Manual (Function Guide) (IS030)

- 6. Trademarks and registered trademarks
  - HP-UX is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Co. in the United States.
  - UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.
  - Microsoft® and Windows® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
  - Solaris is a trademark or a registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
  - Linux is a trademark or registered trademark of Mr. Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Other product names and company names, etc. are trademarks or registered trademarks of the associated companies.

7. In this document, matters to which careful attention needs to be paid will be described as follows:

Be sure to observe the contents.

If the indications are ignored and the system is improperly operated, settings which have been already made might be affected.

Type of Indication		
Туре	Description	
⚠	Describes contents which require special attention during operation.	
<b></b>	Describes limitations to operation and similar information.	

The First Edition in October 2001 The Tenth Edition in November 2004

## Contents

Chapter 1       Storage Overview	19
1.1       Disk Array         1.2       Disk Array Configuration         1.2       Overview of Disk Array Configuration Setting         2.1       Pool and RANK	
1.2       Disk Array Configuration         Chapter 2       Overview of Disk Array Configuration Setting         2.1       Pool and RANK	
Chapter 2 Overview of Disk Array Configuration Setting	I-4
2.1 Pool and RANK	I-21
	I-22
2.1.1 Basic Pool	I-23
2.1.2 Dynamic Pool	I-24
2.1.3 RANK	I-28
2.2 Logical Disk	1-29
2.3     Spare       2.4     Nickname	I-30
Chapter 3 Overview of AccessControl	I-32
3.1 LD Set	
3.2 WWN Mode	I-35
3.3 Port Mode	I-37
Part II Installation	
Chapter 4 Configuration Setting and Access Control Installation	II-2
4.1 System Configuration	II-2
4.2 Configuration Setting and AccessControl Installation	
Dart III Application	111.4
Part III Application	III-1 III-2
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation	III-1 III-2 III-2
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager	III-1 III-2 III-3
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array	
Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK	III-1 III-2 III-2 III-3 III-3 III-3 III-3
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk	III-1 III-2 III-3 III-3 III-3 III-3 III-3 III-4
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk.         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.	III-1 III-2 III-2 III-3 III-3 III-3 III-3 III-4 III-4
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk.         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control.	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-4           III-4
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk.         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control.         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion.         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-5
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control.         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-5           III-5           III-5
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding a Logical Disk         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-6           III-6
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk.         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-6           III-7
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk.         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding a Logical Disk.         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk Configuration Changing         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-6           III-7           III-7
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk.         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control.         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2       Unbinding a Logical Disk	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3       Unbinding a Pool or RANK	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3       Unbinding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-8
Part III Application         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control.         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK.         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK.         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration.         5.3       Logical Disk.         5.4       Disk Configuration Changing         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk.         5.3.2       Unbinding a Pool or RANK.         5.3.3       Unbinding a Pool or RANK.         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.3.5       Binding a Pool or RANK.	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-9
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array.         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk.         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname.         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control.         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5       Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.6       Changing the Access Control Configuration	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-9           III-9
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control         5.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding a Logical Disk         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3       Unbinding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5       Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.5       Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.6       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3.6       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.4       Access Control Installation	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-9           III-9           III-9           III-10
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5       Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.6       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.4       Access Control Installation         5.4.1       Stopping the Server         5.4.2       Setting a Disk Array	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-9           III-10           III-11
Part III Application         Chapter 5 Operation Procedures         5.1 Initial Installation         5.1.1 Setting the Storage Manager         5.1.2 Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3 Binding a Pool or RANK         5.1.4 Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5 Setting a Logical Disk         5.1.6 Installing the Access Control         5.2 Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1 Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2 Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3 Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3 Logical Disk Configuration Changing         5.3.1 Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2 Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3 Unbinding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4 Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.5 Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.4 Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5 Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.6 Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.4 Access Control Installation         5.4.1 Stopping the Server         5.4.2 Setting a Disk Array         5.4 Setting a Disk Array         5.4 Setting a Disk Array         5.4 Setting a Disk Array	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-9           III-11           III-11
Part III Application         Chapter 5 Operation Procedures         5.1 Initial Installation         5.1.1 Setting the Storage Manager         5.1.2 Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3 Binding a Pool or RANK         5.1.4 Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5 Setting the Access Control         5.16 Installing the Access Control         5.2 Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1 Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2 Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3 Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3 Logical Disk         5.3.1 Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2 Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3 Unbinding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4 Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5 Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.6 Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.4 Access Control Installation         5.4 Access Control Installation         5.4 Access Control Installation         5.4.1 Stopping the Server         5.4.2 Setting a Disk Array         5.4 Creating an Disk Array	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-9           III-10           III-11           III-11           III-11
Part III Application         S.1       Initial Installation         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control.         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3       Unbinding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.6       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.4       Stopping the Server         5.4.3       Setting a Disk Array         5.4.1       Stopping the Server         5.4.2       Se	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-9           III-10           III-11           III-11           III-11
Part III Application         Chapter 5       Operation Procedures         5.1       Initial Installation         5.1.1       Setting the Storage Manager.         5.1.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.1.3       Binding a Pool or RANK.         5.1.4       Binding a Logical Disk         5.1.5       Setting a Logical Disk Nickname         5.1.6       Installing the Access Control         5.2       Physical Disk Expansion         5.1.6       Installing and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.1       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.2       Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK         5.2.3       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.3       Logical Disk         5.3.1       Deassigning a Logical Disk         5.3.2       Unbinding a Logical Disk         5.3.3       Unbinding a Pool or RANK         5.3.4       Binding a Pool or RANK         5.3.5       Binding a Logical Disk         5.3.6       Changing the Access Control Configuration         5.4       Access Control Installation         5.4.1       Stopping the Server         5.4.2       Setting a Disk Array         5.4.3       Setting the Port Access Mode <t< td=""><td>III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-9           III-10           III-11           III-11           III-11</td></t<>	III-1           III-2           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-3           III-4           III-4           III-5           III-6           III-6           III-7           III-8           III-8           III-8           III-9           III-10           III-11           III-11           III-11

	5.4.8	Starting the Server	III-12
5.	5 Se	rver Expansion	III-13
	5.5.1	Setting the Port Access Mode	III-14
	5.5.2	Creating an LD Set	III-14
	5.5.3	Linking an LD Set and Path	III-14
	5.5.4	Assigning a Logical Disk	III-14
	5.5.5	Restarting the Server	III-14
5.	6 Ac	cess Control Configuration Changing	III-15
	5.6.1	Stopping the Server	III-16
	5.6.2	Deassigning a Logical Disk	III-16
	5.6.3	Deleting an LD Set	III-16
	5.6.4	Creating an LD Set	III-16
	5.6.5	Setting/Changing Link between an LD Set and Path	III-16
	5.6.6	Assigning a Logical Disk	III-16
	5.6.7	Restarting the Server	III-16

Part IV 0	Operations	IV-1
Chapter	6 Parameters	IV-2
6.1	Parameters	IV-2
6.2	Operating Range	IV-6

Chanter 7	Disk Array Configuration Setting (\$400/\$1400/\$2400/\$2800)	IV-7
71 Pc	ol Binding	IV-7
711	Binding a Pool	IV-8
7.1.2	Expanding Capacity of a Pool	IV-21
7.1.3	Unbinding a Pool	IV-26
7.1.4	Renaming a Pool	IV-29
7.1.5	Changing Rebuild Time and Expansion Time of a Pool	IV-31
7.2 M	ethod of Binding Logical Disks	IV-34
7.2.1	Binding Logical Disks	IV-35
7.2.2	Expanding Capacity of Logical Disks	IV-53
7.2.3	Unbinding Logical Disks	IV-56
7.2.4	Renaming a Logical Disk	IV-58
7.2.5	Changing Time to Bind Logical Disks	IV-60
7.2.6	Logical Disk Batch Setting	IV-62
7.3 Bi	nding a Spare	IV-84
7.3.1	Binding a Spare	IV-84
7.3.2	Unbinding a Spare	IV-89
7.4 Ex	planation of Configuration Setting Screen	IV-91
7.4.1	Logical Disk Binding List Screen	IV-91
7.4.2	Logical Disk Configuration Screen	IV-94
7.4.3	Pool List View	IV-95
7.4.4	Pool Information View	IV-97
7.4.5	Spare List View	IV-100
7.4.6	Unused Disk List View	IV-101
Chapter 8	Disk Array Configuration Setting (S100/S1100/S1200/S1300/S2100/S2200/S2300)	IV-102
8.1 Bi	nding a RANK	IV-102
8.1.1	RANK Bind	IV-104
8.1.2	RANK Unbind	IV-106
8.1.3	Expanding a RANK	IV-108
8.1.4	Setting RANK Rebuild Time	IV-110
8.2 M	ethod of Binding Logical Disks	IV-114
8.2.1	Binding Logical Disks	IV-115
8.2.2	Unbinding Logical Disks	IV-119
8.2.3	Setting Logical Disk Bind Time	IV-120
8.2.4	Logical Disk Batch Setting	IV-121
8.3 Bi	nding a Spare	IV-132
8.3.1	Spare Bind	IV-133
8.3.2	Spare Unbind	IV-134
8.3.3	Spare Rebuilding Mode	IV-135

8.4 \$	Setting the Port	
8.4.1	Expand LUN	
8.5 \$	Special Settings	IV-139
8.5.1	Cross Call and Auto Assignment	IV-140
8.5.2	Ownership	
8.6 I	Explanation of Configuration Setting Screen	IV-143
8.6.1	RANK/Spare Screen	IV-144
8.6.2	Logical Disk Screen	
~		
Chapter 9	Configuration Setting (Common to All Units)	IV-153
9.1	Nickname Setting	
9.1.1	Setting a Disk Array Name	
9.1.2	Setting a Port Name	
9.1.3	Renaming a Pool	
9.1.4	Renaming a Logical Disk	
9.1.5	Nickname Batch Setting	IV-158
9.2 1		
9.3	Network	
9.4 1	License.	
9.5	Setting Disk Array Time	
9.6 (	Getting Log in the Disk Array	
9.7 (	Getting Configuration Information	
9.7.1	Getting Configuration Information in Text Format	
9.7.2	Getting Configuration Information in CSV Format	
9.8 1	Replication Pair Batch Setting	
Chanter 1	0 Access Control Operations	IV-182
10.1	Changing the Port Mode	IV-182
10.2	Setting LD Sets	IV-185
10.2.1	1 Setting an LD Set	IV-186
10.2.3	2 Linking an LD Set and Path	IV-188
10.2	Changing the LD Set Name	IV-193
10.2.4	4 Deleting an LD Set	IV-195
10.3	Assigning a Logical Disk	IV-197
10.3.1	1 Assigning a Logical Disk Newly.	
10.3.2	2 Assigning an Additional Logical Disk	
10.3.3	3 Deassigning a Logical Disk	
10.4	Starting the Access Control	
10.5	Access Control Screen	
10.5.	1 Access Control Setting Screen	
10.5.2	2 Access Control Start/Mode Change Screen	
10.5.3	3 Access Control Setting Confirmation Screen	
Appendix	A Specifications	
A.I S	Specified Number of Disk Arrays to Be Set	l
A.2 I	Number of LD Sets Locatable in One Disk Array	l
A.3 X	Specified Number of Paths to Be Set for LD Set	1
A.4 1	Number of LDs Locatable in One LD Set	2
A.5 I	Notes on Binding a Pool	2
Appendix	B Configuration Setting Command	
B.1 1	Network Relief Setting Command (iSMnetconf)	
B.2 S	Start and Stop of Network Relief Setting Command	4
B.2.1	Example of Displaying Options	
B.2.2	Setting File	
Appendix		
	KAID	
C.2 I	List of Rank-Configuratie RAID Types	
U.3 I	List of Pool-Configurable KAID Types	

Appendix	D Notes on Use for Data Replication	21
D.1 N	Notes on Binding Logical Disks	21
D.2 F	Recommended RAID Configuration	23
D.3 C	Capacity Except Recommended RAID Configuration	24
D.3.1	Concept of Logical Disk Bind Capacity	24
D.3.2	Detailed Combination of RAID Configuration	
D.3.3	Method of Specifying Configuration Setting	29
Appendix	E Logical Disk Used Capacity	32
Appendix	F Batch Setup File	35
F.1 N	Vickname Setting File	35
F.2 P	Pair Setting File	
Appendix	G ACOS-4 Resource Operation Guard	43
Index		47

## **Part I Overview**

## Chapter 1 Storage Overview

This chapter describes the overview of a disk array, which is the object of the iSM management. iSM is the software for operating and maintaining the disk arrays. To understand the iSM functions and to use the iSM efficiently, first read through this chapter, then proceed to Chapter 2.

## 1.1 Disk Array

The outline of the disk array which is the object of the iSM management is explained below.

#### (1) 4000 series

The 4000 series, high-end disk array, realizes **high scalability** (up to 10 extended cabinets can be connected to a basic cabinet) and **high availability** (all components have redundancy) and displays **stable performance**. Furthermore, it provides **the function to replicate logical disks** (DynamicDataReplication and RemoteDataReplication) in and between disk arrays, which enables backup and batch processing to be performed in parallel with the main function.

### (2) 3000 series

The 3000 series, mid-range disk array that can handle key business, realizes **high scalability** (up to 2 extended cabinets can be connected to a basic cabinet) and **high availability** (all components have redundancy) and displays **stable performance**. Furthermore, it supports functions equivalent to all of the solutions (DynamicDataReplication, RemoteDataReplication, etc.) provided by the 4000 series, the high-end disk array, thereby efficiently performing business.

### (3) 2800 series

The 2800 series, mid-range disk array, realizes **high scalability** (up to 16 disk enclosures can be added) and **high availability** (main components have redundancy). In addition, it provides a **function to replicate logical disks** (DynamicDataReplication) in the disk array, which enables effective backup and batch processing. Furthermore, the 2800 series can supports an additional parity disk for the **high reliability RAID** 



(RAID6) to secure the redundancy against an error in one physical disk.

### (4) 2000 series

#### - S2100/S2200/S2300

S2100/S2200/S2300, mid-range disk array, realizes high scalability (up to 14 disk enclosures can be extended) and high availability (main components have redundancy). Furthermore, it provides a function to replicate logical disks (DynamicDataReplication) in the disk array, which enables effective backup and batch processing.

#### - S2400

S2400, mid-range disk array, realizes high scalability (up to 8 disk enclosures can be added) and high availability (main components have redundancy). In addition, it provides a function to replicate logical disks (DynamicDataReplication, RemoteDataReplication) in and between disk arrays, which enables effective backup and batch processing.

Furthermore, this version can support an additional parity disk for the high reliability RAID (RAID6) to secure the redundancy against an error in one physical disk.

#### (5) 1000 series

#### - S1100/S1200/S1300

S1100/S1200/S1300, a low-end model disk array, realizes the little space consuming (one controller and maximum of 15 PDs may be loaded per 3U) and high availability (main components have redundancy).

#### - S1400

S1400, a low-end model disk array, realizes space saving (one controller and a maximum of 15 PDs may be installed per 3U) and high availability (main components have redundancy). In addition, it provides a function to replicate logical disks (DynamicDataReplication) in the disk array, which enables effective backup and batch processing.

Furthermore, this version can support an additional parity disk for the high reliability RAID (RAID6) to secure the redundancy against an error in one physical disk.

#### (6) 100 series

#### - S100

The 100 series, entry model disk array designed for Windows/Linux, realizes **space saving** (one controller and a maximum of 15 PDs may be installed per 3U) and **high availability** (main components have redundancy).

### - S400

S400, entry model disk array designed for Windows/Linux, realizes space saving (one controller and a maximum of 15 PDs may be installed per 3U) and high availability (main components have redundancy).

Furthermore, this version can support an additional parity disk for the high reliability RAID (RAID6) to secure the redundancy against an error in one physical disk.



## **1.2 Disk Array Configuration**

### (1) Components

The disk array is composed of Disk Array Controller (DAC), which carries the component of control systems, such as host director, disk director and cache, and Disk Enclosure (DE) that carries two or more Physical Disks controlled by DAC.



Figure 1-1 Disk Array Composition (4000 Series)



Figure 1-2 Disk Array Composition (3000 Series)



Figure 1-3 Disk Array Composition (2000/2800 Series)



Figure 1-4 Disk Array Composition (100/1000 Series)

<Components identification>

In the 3000/4000 series disk array, the cabinet composed of Disk Array Controller and two or more disk enclosures is called as "Basic Cabinet (BC)" and the cabinet that is composed of multiple disk enclosures to be connected to basic cabinet is called as "Extended Cabinet (EC)". The 3000/4000 series disk array can mount 10 or 15 Physical Disks (PDs) per disk enclosure, and 4 disk enclosures are managed as 1 group (array group). Individual PD has identification number per PD management group (PD group) that includes the above 4 array groups. Thus the combination of PD group number and PD position number enables identifying of the physical mounting place of the PDs.

In the same way, unique identification number is assigned to other components in disk enclosure (shown below), per controller unit, and this identification number enables components in the same disk enclosure to be specified. But assignment of identification number depends on number of component in disk enclosure.

The 2800 series disk array is composed of Disk Array Controller (DAC) and one or more disk enclosures. (There has no concept of basic cabinet and extended cabinet as in the 4000 series). It can mount 15 physical disks (PDs) per disk enclosure. Only one PD management group (PD group) is defined in it (i.e., all physical disks belong to one PD group). There is no concept of array group.

The 2000 series disk array is composed of Disk Array Controller (DAC) and one or more disk enclosures. (There has no concept of basic cabinet and extended cabinet as in the 4000 series). It can mount 10 or 15 Physical Disks (PDs) per disk enclosure. PD management group (PD group) is defined depending on the connection relation to disk array controller. (PDs connected to the same group are defined as one PD group) There is no concept of array group.

In the 100/1000 series disk array, Disk Array Controller (DAC) and DE which are in different cabinets in the 2000 series are put in the same cabinet. 15 Physical Disks (PDs) can be carried in Disk Array Controller (DAC). Because there is not the concept of array group, the Physical Disks connected to the same group are managed as one group (PD group).

<4000 series>



<3000 series>



Figure 1-5 3000/4000 Series Disk Array Components

<2800 series>



Figure 1-6 2800 Series Disk Array Components

<2000 series>

- S2100/S2200/S2300



- S2400



Figure 1-7 2000 Series Disk Array Components

<100/1000 series>

- \$100/\$1100/\$1200/\$1300



- S400/S1400



Figure 1-8 100/1000 Series Disk Array Components



[2800 series logical block diagram (with alternative paths and options)]



- \*1 The 2800 series disk array has one PD group.
- \*2 Hexadecimal digits in the brackets are PD numbers.
- \*3 DE denotes a disk enclosure.
- \*4 PD group 0 and PD group 0' are the same PD group.

Figure 1-9 2800 Series Logical Block Diagram

[2000 series logical block diagram]

- S2100/S2200/S2300 (with alternative paths and options)



- \*1 The 2000 series disk array has two PD groups.
- \*2 Hexadecimal digits in the brackets are PD numbers.
- \*3 "DE" denotes a disk enclosure.
- \*4 PD groups 0 and 0' are the same PD group, and also PD groups 1 and 1' are the same PD group.

Figure 1-10 2000 Series (S2100/S2200/S2300) Logical Block Diagram

[2000 series logical block diagram]





- \*1 S2400 has only one PD group.
- \*2 Hexadecimal digits in the brackets are PD numbers.
- \*3 "DE" denotes a disk enclosure.
- \*4 PD groups 0 and 0' are the same PD group.

Figure 1-11 2000 Series (S2400) Logical Block Diagram

[100/1000 series logical block diagram (with alternative paths)]



- S100/S1100/S1200/S1300 (with alternative paths)

- \*1 S100/S1100/S1200/S1300 disk array has only one PD group.
- \*2 Hexadecimal digits in the brackets are PD numbers.
- \*3 "DE" denotes a disk enclosure.
- \*4 PD group 0 and PD group 0' are the same PD group.

Figure 1-12 100/1000 Series (S100/S1100/S1200/S1300) Logical Block Diagram

[100/1000 series logical block diagram (with alternative paths)]

## - S400/S1400 (with alternative paths)



- \*1 S400/S1400 disk array has only one PD group.
- \*2 Hexadecimal digits in the brackets are PD numbers.
- \*3 "DE" denotes a disk enclosure.
- \*4 PD group 0 and PD group 0' are the same PD group.
- \*5 S400 cannot be connected to DE#C.

Figure 1-13 100/1000 Series (S400/S1400) Logical Block Diagram

<Components>

Disk array components are shown below.

Component (Abbreviation)	Configuration Devices (Abbreviation)	Description
Disk Array Controller (DAC)	Host Director (HD)	Host interface control and cache module control device. One to four ports are mounted in single director.
	Replication Director (RD)	Control part of DynamicDataReplication and RemoteDataReplication function. Two ports are mounted in single director.
	Disk Director (DD)	Disk array control device. Four ports are mounted in single director.
	Cache Module Card (CHE)	Cache memory
	Service Processor Card (SVP)	Processing part that provides various interfaces (maintenance PC, Ether, modem, SCBI) to perform power supply control and maintenance.
	Temperature Alarm (DAC_TEMP_ALM)	Temperature abnormality detection part with temperature sensor, in DAC (Disk Array Controller).
	Panel (PANEL)	External panel composed of status display part of disk array, and system power on/off switches.
	Fan (DAC_FANU/FANL)	Cooling fan to maintain the constant temperature inside of the controller. There are two types: Upper and Lower.
	Power Supply (DAC_PS)	Power supply part in DAC.
	Battery Backup Unit (DAC_BBU)	Power supply part to hold data of cache module in DAC.
	Basic Cabinet Junction Box (BC_JB)	Connection part of AC power cable in the basic cabinet. It supplies electric power for components (configuration devices) of cabinet.
	Back Board (DAC_BB)	Back board connecting each component (configuration devices) in DAC.
	Power Control Card (PCC)	Power control part.

	Table 1-1	Component List (1/2)
--	-----------	----------------------

Component (Abbreviation)	Configuration Devices (Abbreviation)	Description
Disk Enclosure	Power Supply	Power supply part in DE (Disk Enclosure).
(DE)	(DE_PS)	
	Fan	Cooling fan in DE to maintain the constant
	(DE_FAN)	temperature inside of the unit.
	Adapter Card	Adapter Card for connection between PD
	(DE_ADP)	and DD.
	Extended Cabinet Junction Box	Connection part of AC power cable in the
	(EC_JB)	extended cabinet. It supplies electric power to components (configuration devices) of cabinet.
	Temperature Alarm	Temperature abnormality detection part
	(DE_TEMP_ALM)	with temperature sensor in DE.
	Back Board	Back board connecting each component
	(DE_BB)	(configuration devices) in DE.
Pool		Virtual medium composing RAID by putting multiple physical disks together.
Physical Disk (PD)		Physical Disk
Logical Disk (LD)		Logical Disk (disk from operation host side)

 Table 1-1
 Component List (2/2)

### (2) Logical configuration of a disk array

In a disk array, put multiple physical disks together to set up a virtual medium to compose RAID, and partition the space in the virtual medium to make logical disks. Data on the logical disks is stored into the areas of physical disk associated with the partitions on the virtual medium in which the logical disks are composed.

The virtual medium is called a pool or RANK, and it supports different logical disk configurations depending on the disk array.

• Pool

Disk arrays with pool

\*The disk arrays with pool are the following: S400/S1400/S2400/S2800

In the disk array indicated above, multiple physical disks put together to make up a virtual medium for RAID is called a pool. The logical disks usually belong to one pool, and the required amount of space is assigned from the pool.

There are two types of pool available as described below. They function in different manners.

#### **Basic pool**

The basic pool is a virtual medium, which manages the space on the pool using a continuous address space.

As you handle logical disks on RANK, assign the continuous space on the pool to the logical disks. In addition, like a multi-RANK configuration, the basic pool supports a striping configuration for distributing and storing data into multiple RAID configurations.

For the practical configurations of physical disks that bind a basic pool, refer to C.3 "List of Pool-Configurable RAID Types".

Note that the basic pool does not allow using any additional features such as pool capacity expansion or logical disk capacity expansion.

#### **Dynamic pool**

The dynamic pool is a virtual medium, which manages the space on the pool using a virtual storage space.

Like block management in a file system, the dynamic pool manages used space and unused space. When making up logical disks, separate unused space from the pool according to the required capacity, then assign the physical disk space corresponding to the logical disk space.

The dynamic pool moderates the limit on the number of constituent physical disks and enables flexible configurations. In addition, the dynamic pool allows to use additional features such as pool capacity expansion and logical disk capacity expansion. For details on the dynamic pool, refer to 2.1.2 "Dynamic Pool".

For the practical configurations of physical disks on a dynamic pool, refer to C.3 "List of Pool-Configurable RAID Types".









Figure 1-14 Logical Configurations of Disk Arrays (Pool)

• RANK

<Supported disk arrays> Other than disk arrays with pool

In the disk arrays indicated above, multiple physical disks put together to make up a virtual medium for RAID is called RANK. Areas on RANK are controlled by using a continuous address space.

The logical disks usually belong to one RANK, and a continuous space on one RANK is assigned to them.

In a multi-RANK configuration, the logical disks belong to multiple RANKs, and continuous spaces on the multiple RANKs are assigned to them.

For the types of RAID configurable as RANK, refer to C.2 "List of RANK-Configurable RAID Types".



Logical Disk Configuration of RANK



Figure 1-15 Logical Configurations of Disk Arrays (RANK)

## Chapter 2 Overview of Disk Array Configuration Setting

This chapter describes an overview of the disk array configuration setting.

The disk array configuration setting is a function for setting the configuration when initializing the disk array and when extending the physical disks. This operation can be performed by using a GUI from the iSM client.



Figure 2-1 Configuration Setting Outline

## 2.1 Pool and RANK

In a disk array, put multiple physical disks together to set up a virtual medium to compose RAID, and partition the space in the virtual medium to make logical disks. Data on the logical disks is stored into the areas of physical disk associated with the partitions on the virtual medium in which the logical disks are composed.

The virtual medium is called a pool or RANK, and it supports different logical disk configurations depending on the disk array.

• Pool

<Supported disk array> S400/S1400/S2400/S2800

In the disk array indicated above, multiple physical disks put together to make up a virtual medium for RAID is called a pool. The logical disks usually belong to one pool, and the required amount of space is assigned from the pool.

RANK
 </supported disk arrays>
 Other than S400/S1400/S2400/S2800

In the disk arrays indicated above, multiple physical disks put together to make up a virtual medium for RAID is called RANK. Areas on RANK are controlled by using a continuous address space.

There are two types of pool available as described below. They function in different manners.

## 2.1.1 Basic Pool

The basic pool is a virtual medium, which manages the space on the pool using a continuous address space.

As you handle logical disks on RANK, assign the continuous space on the pool to the logical disks. In addition, like a multi-RANK configuration, the basic pool supports a striping configuration for distributing and storing data into multiple RAID configurations.

Note that the basic pool does not allow using any additional features such as pool capacity expansion or logical disk capacity expansion.





Figure 2-2 Logical Configuration of Disk Arrays (Basic Pool)

The table below shows the number of physical disks and the number of pools available by the RAID type on S400/S1400/S2400/S2800.

	- ·	
-	Basic	pool

	Disk Arroy	Number of Physical Disks										
RAID Type	DISK Allay	2	4	5	8	10	16	20				
RAID1	S400/S1400/	0	-	-	-	-	-	-				
RAID5	S2400/S2800	-	-	0	-	-	-	-				
RAID10		-	0	-	0	-	0	-				
RAID50		-	-	-	-	0	-	0				

O: Available -: Unavailable

## 2.1.2 Dynamic Pool

The dynamic pool is a virtual medium, which manages the space on the pool using a virtual storage space.

Like block management in a file system, the dynamic pool manages used space and unused space. When making up logical disks, separate unused space from the pool according to the required capacity, then assign the physical disk space corresponding to the logical disk space.

The dynamic pool moderates the limit on the number of constituent physical disks and enables flexible configurations. In addition, the dynamic pool allows to use additional features such as pool capacity expansion and logical disk capacity expansion.



Logical Disk Configuration of Dynamic Pool

Figure 2-3 Logical Configuration of Disk Arrays (Dynamic Pool)

S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array supports the dynamic pool function.

The dynamic pool function puts a set of physical disks on the disk array together to make up a virtual storage pool. That is, it picks up the amount of storage required for the transaction from space unused in the pool and bind logical disks. If the storage capacity becomes short, you can add physical disks one by one as required and putting them into the pool to expand the unused space of the pool. The additional unused space of the pool can be used to bind a new logical disk or expand the existing logical disk capacity, keeping the current data. In addition, you can put back logical disks no longer needed to the pool to extend the unused space of the pool.

Therefore, the dynamic pool function helps to manage the capacity of the storage efficiently and make a large reduction in the cost on additional storage space. It also helps to flexibly support any configuration changes or expansion of the storage to be done for addition of new transactions or modification to existing transactions.



Figure 2-4 Overview of the Dynamic Pool Function

The dynamic pool function provides the following advantages:

• Reduction in the cost of storage expansion

When some additional storage space is required due to an addition of new transactions and so forth, you can add physical disks one by one as required to bind a new logical disk or expand the logical disk capacity at that time. This means that you can add physical disks just enough for the required capacity only with the least additional cost.

• Better flexibility of storage configuration

If the amount of data to be handled increases and the storage capacity becomes short, you can expand the logical disk space, keeping the existing data in the logical disks. In addition, returning logical disks no longer needed to the pool secures the unused space of the pool which can be used for another purpose. With these features, you can flexibly support any configuration changes of storage to be made for modification to existing transactions or operation of existing transactions.



#### (1) You can bind a dynamic pool:

You can bind a virtual storage space, or a dynamic pool, by selecting a set of unused physical disks on the disk array. The RAID type usable and the number of physical disks required for a dynamic pool are fixed. Select either of the following two types of RAID6 configuration according to the number of physical disks required. The two types of configuration have different capacity efficiencies:

RAID6 (4+PQ): 6 or more physical disks required (capacity efficiency: 67% approx.)RAID6 (8+PQ): 10 or more physical disks required (capacity efficiency: 80%)

For details on how to bind a dynamic pool, refer to 7.1.1 "Binding a Pool" in Part IV "Operations".

	D		1
٠	Dyna	amic	pool

RAID Type	Disk Array	Number of Physical Disks
RAID6 (4+PQ)	S400/S1400/	6 to 60
	S2400/S2800	(120 or 240)*1
RAID6 (8+PQ)		10 to 60
		(120 or 240)*1

\*1: The maximum number of physical disks is 60 when pools are in use.

To use 61 or more disks, you need to add physical disks by extending dynamic pools.

#### (2) You can expand the dynamic pool capacity:

You can expand the capacity of the dynamic pool by selecting unused physical disks on the disk array and putting them into the dynamic pool. The capacity actually added is the capacity of the additional physical disk(s) multiplexed by the pool capacity efficiency. You can add physical disks one by one. Naturally, you can add multiple physical disks at one time.

Usually, expanding the dynamic pool rebuilds data on the additional physical disk(s) to keep the redundancy of RAID. Rebuilding data puts some load to the physical disks of the dynamic pool and influences access to the existing logical disks which belong to the pool. The additional space becomes available after the rebuild process finishes.

However, when the number of physical disks simultaneously added to the pool is a specified number or more, the dynamic pool is expanded and made available without the rebuild process. The additional space is usable immediately after the physical disks are added to the pool.

The RAID configuration cannot be changed from RAID6 (4+PQ) to RAID6 (8+PQ) or vise versa. You need to add physical disks to the pool, keeping the RAID configuration.

Additional Physical Disks	Configuration	Rebuild after Expansion of Pool
1 to 5	RAID6 (4+PQ)	The pool is rebound. Rebinding the pool influences access to the existing logical disks which belong to
1 to 9	RAID6 (8+PQ)	available after the rebind process finishes.
6 or more	RAID6 (4+PQ)	The pool is not rebound. The expansion of the pool nuts no influence on any existing logical disks which
10 or more	RAID6 (8+PQ)	belongs to it. The additional space to the pool becomes available immediately after it is added.

For details on how to expand a dynamic pool, refer to 7.1.2 "Expanding Capacity of a Pool" in Part IV "Operations".

### (3) You can bind the logical disks:

1

You can pick up the amount of storage required from the unused space in the dynamic pool and bind logical disks required for it. For details on how to bind logical disks, refer to 7.2.1 "Binding Logical Disks" in Part IV, "Operations".

#### (4) You can expand the logical disk capacity:

You can pick up the amount of storage required from the unused space in the dynamic pool and increase the existing logical disk capacity. While data stored in the logical disks is secured, some space usable for additional logical disks is added after the existing logical disks. The way of having the host identify the additional space depends on the platform.

For details on how to expand the logical disk capacity, refer to 7.2.2 "Expanding Capacity of Logical Disks" in Part IV "Operations".

.....

Some platforms do not support expansion of logical disk capacity. For details about it, ask the maintenance personnel. In addition, in case of an error or failure, it is recommended to make a backup of data stored in the existing logical disks before expanding the logical disk capacity.

#### RANK 2.1.3

The logical disks usually belong to one RANK, and a continuous space on one RANK is assigned to them.

In a multi-RANK configuration, the logical disks belong to multiple RANKs, and continuous spaces on the multiple RANKs are assigned to them.



Logical Disk Configuration of RANK



Figure 2-5 Logical Configurations of Disk Arrays (RANK)

The table below shows the number of physical disks and the number of RANKs available by the RAID type on the 100/1000/2000 series (not including S400/S1400/S2400).

		Number of Physical Disks														
RAID Type	Disk Array	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
RAID0	100/1000/2000 series	0	-	0	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0
RAID1		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
RAID5		-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
RAID10		-	-	-	0	-	0	-	0	-	0	-	0	-	0	-

O: Available -: Unavailable
# 2.2 Logical Disk

The logical disks in the disk array are equivalent to the physical disk when viewed from the OS. In the OS, this physical disk is partitioned to be managed as multiple logical disks. In the disk array, multiple physical disks are bound as a pool or RANK, which is then divided to form logical disks.



- \*1 When the OS is used to support the volume group and the software RAID, etc.
- \*2 The PD group refers to a management aggregate of physical disks consisting of one or more DEs.
- \*3 The Disk Enclosure (DE) refers to a management aggregate of 10 to 15 physical disks.
- \*4 The physical disk number and the RANK number are given in terms of each PD group.

Figure 2-6 Physical Disks and Logical Disks

# 2.3 Spare

When binding pools or RANKs other than RAID0, data are still in the disks even when a single physical disk (two physical disks for RAID6) fail(s). However, if one more physical disk fails, data may be in danger of being lost.

To cope with this situation, the reliability of the disk array can be enhanced further by switching to a reserve (i.e. Spare) disk which is set beforehand, at the point when a physical disk fails.

Spares can be set for physical disks which are not used in pool or RANK binding, thus making it possible to recover data to a Spare in the same PD group when a physical disk fails. When recovery to Spares is started, the pool or RANK is rebuilt and the Spares become physical disks which comprise the pool or RANK. The failed physical disk can be replaced without stopping the access to the disk array. Considering the physical layout, it is normally desirable to set one spare disk per DE for the physical disk in the rightmost slot in the DE.

### 2.4 Nickname

Nicknames refer to any names that can be set for the disk array, the logical disk, the port, and the pool with regard to iSM's management target. Since the names thus set are stored in the disk array, they are held regardless of whether iSM or a disk array is restarted or not.

(1) Disk Array Name

Refers to any ID name for iSM's management target disk array. When the disk array is specified with iSM, the disk array name is used.

(2) LD Name

Refers to any ID name for a logical disk in iSM's management target disk array. When the logical disk is specified with iSM, the LD name is used.

(3) Port Name

Refers to any ID name for a port in iSM's management target disk array. When the port is specified with iSM, the port name is used.

(4) Pool Name

Refers to any ID name for a pool in the iSM's management target disk array. When the pool is specified with iSM, the pool name is used.

Before operating the disk array, users can perform efficient management of the disk array by setting the ID information with the nickname.

## Chapter 3 Overview of AccessControl

This section describes functions available when program product "AccessControl" is purchased. The AccessControl is optional software.

The AccessControl provides functions to set and unset information on accessibility from the business server to logical disks.

Using these functions enables users to easily and flexibly change configuration of logical disks and perform accessibility setting.

		Disk A <u>r</u> rav			
		Accessibl	e Area		
		■In Use from Bus	Iness Server		Add/Delete of logical disks is possible.
		Inaccessible	e Area	HA	
AccessControl function protects LDs from business server		■In Non-use from [Preserve G	Business Server roup]	- 41	

Figure 3-1 Overview of Access Control

• [Inaccessible area]

Logical disk groups hidden from the business server by using the AccessControl function exist in this area. This area is called Preserve Group.

[Preserve Group] Logical disks hidden from the business server and inaccessible exist in this area. Contents of the logical disks are retained and existing logical disks include logical disks with no special purpose settings, logical disks set in pairs for replication (MV, RV), volume for snapshots (BV), and link-volume (LV).

• [Accessible area]

Logical disk groups accessible from the business server by using the AccessControl function exist in this area. Contents of the logical disks depend on the business server, and existing logical disks include ordinary logical disks with no special purpose settings, replication volume (MV, RV), volume for snapshots (BV), and link-volume (LV). In addition, each logical disk is assigned to an LD Set.

...

# 3.1 LD Set

The concept of "LD Set" is introduced to Access Control. The concept of LD Set enables to assign logical disks collectively to ports of multiple disk arrays and WWNs. When one single business server has multiple access paths and if its I/O paths are duplicated or it is clustered, define multiple access paths together by using an LD Set.

For ports and WWNs defined as paths of an identical LD Set, Access Control can be collectively set. That is, when you add or remove an LD Set after setting up Access Control, you can collectively handle ports and WWNs with an LD Set specified.

When a disk array with the program product AccessControl(WWN) applied is in use, only WWNs can be defined as paths of LD Sets.



Figure 3-2 Schematic Diagram of AccessControl

...

# 3.2 WWN Mode

#### (1) Function

This function, which can set the accessible logical disk in terms of each business server HBA (Host Bus Adaptor), can set whether the logical disk is accessible or not in terms of each server. The HBA has the only ID code called WWN (World Wide Name). Use this code to set the WWN which allows access to logical disks.



Figure 3-3 Schematic Diagram of AccessControl (WWN Mode)

Logical Disk No. HBA	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0a	0b
0	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-	-	-			-	-	-	-
1			-	-	-	-			-	-	-	-
2	-	-	$\checkmark$		-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-
3	-	-			-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-
4	-	-	-	-		-	-	-	-	-		-

 Table 3-1
 Setting WWN and Logical Disk Numbers

 $\sqrt{}$ : Sets HBA's WWN and logical disk number as being accessible.

-: Sets HBA's WWN and logical disk number as being inaccessible.

According to the settings above:

- Business server A can access logical disks LD00, LD01, LD06, and LD07.
- Business server B can access logical disks LD02, LD03, LD08, and LD09.

- Business server C can access logical disks LD04 and LD0a.
- LD05 and LD0b cannot be accessed from any business server.

This function can divide the logical disks which bind the disk array into logical disk groups in terms of each business server HBA (Host Bus Adaptor). It can also restrict the access in terms of each server, thus making possible data protection and security protection, etc.

#### (2) Setting

This mode can be set through the configuration setting screen of the iSM client.

### 3.3 Port Mode

#### (1) Function

This function, which can set the accessible logical disk in terms of each disk array port, allows the access management for the logical disk in terms of each business server connected to each port of the disk array.



Figure 3-4 Schematic Diagram of Access Control (Port Mode)

Logical Disk No. Port	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0a	0b
Port0	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-	-	-
Port1	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-	-	-
Port2	-	-			-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-
Port3	-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	-	-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	-

 Table 3-2
 Setting Port and Logical Disk Numbers

 $\sqrt{}$ : Sets the port and logical disk number as being accessible.

-: Sets the port and logical disk number as being inaccessible.

According to the settings in Table 3-2:

- Business server A can access logical disks LD00, LD01, LD06 and LD07 through ports Port0 and Port1.
- Business server B can access logical disks LD02, LD03, LD08 and LD09 through port Port2.

- Business server C can access logical disks LD04 and LD0a through port Port3.
- LD05 and LD0b cannot be accessed from any business server.

This function can divide the logical disks which bind the disk array into logical disk groups and set whether to restrict the access or not in terms of each port. Data protection and security protection, etc. in terms of each business server connected to the port can be achieved through this function.

#### (2) Setting

This mode can be set through the configuration setting screen of the iSM client. For setting of a disk array with the program product AccessControl(WWN) in port mode, ask our maintenance personnel.



This page is intentionally left blank.



# **Part II Installation**

### Chapter 4 Configuration Setting and Access Control Installation

# 4.1 System Configuration

For information on configuration settings and examples of system configuration when using Access Control function, refer to Chapter 3 "System Configuration" of the "Manual Guide".

### 4.2 Configuration Setting and AccessControl Installation

Configuration Setting and Access Control functions are installed at the same time installing the iSM server. For information on installing and uninstalling, refer to "Server Installation" and "Client Installation" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with the OS in use.

# Part III Application

### Chapter 5 Operation Procedures

# 5.1 Initial Installation

When initially installing a system and a disk array, make the settings basically in accordance with the following procedure.



Execute the following work while referring to the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with your OS.

- Install the iSM.
- Set the target disk array as a monitoring target.
- Set the user information.

If necessary, set a Disk Array. (For details, refer to 5.1.2 "Setting a Disk Array".)

Bind a pool or RANK. (For details, refer to 5.1.3 "Binding a Pool or RANK".)

Bind a logical disk. (For details, refer to 5.1.4 "Binding a Logical Disk".)

Set a nickname of the logical disk. (For details, refer to 5.1.5 "Setting a Logical Disk Nickname".)

If necessary, newly install the Access Control. (For details, refer to 5.1.6 "Installing the Access Control".)

### 5.1.1 Setting the Storage Manager

The following work is required before setting the configuration of the disk array.

#### (1) Installing the Storage Manger

For information on installing the iSM, refer to the "Installation and Setting" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with your OS.

#### (2) Considering the target Disk Array as a monitoring target

It is necessary to consider the disk array as the monitoring target by iSM in setting the configuration of the disk array. For information on how to target for monitoring, refer to 1.3 "Environmental Setting" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with your OS.

#### (3) Setting the user information

For user information settings, refer to 1.3 "Environmental Setting" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" and 6.2 "Operating Range" in this manual. To set configuration, your user level needs to be Level 3. To see configuration, your user level needs to be Level 1 or higher.

#### 5.1.2 Setting a Disk Array

Depending on the operating environment, it is necessary to set the disk array. For information on the parameters, refer to 6.1 "Parameters". Before changing the settings, carefully read the disk array manual until they are fully understood. For how to set the disk array, refer to Chapter 9 "Configuration Setting (Common to All Units)".

### 5.1.3 Binding a Pool or RANK

Bind the pool or RANK. RAID configurations differ depending on the disk array.

- Disk arrays with pool

S400/S1400/S2400/S2800

- Disk arrays with RANK

Other than S400/S1400/S2400/S2800

For specific procedures, refer to 7.1 "Pool Binding" or 8.1 "Binding a RANK".

#### **III-3**

### 5.1.4 Binding a Logical Disk

Bind a logical disk on a pool or RANK.

For specific procedure, refer to the following sections.

To bind a logical disk only (individual setting)

- Refer to 7.2.1 "Binding Logical Disks" for disk arrays with pool.
- Refer to 8.2.1 "Binding Logical Disks" for disk arrays with RANK

To bind a pool/RANK and logical disks (batch setting)

- Refer to 7.2.6 "Logical Disk Batch Setting" for disk arrays with pool.
- Refer to 8.2.4 "Logical Disk Batch Setting" for disk arrays with RANK.

Logical disks whose capacities are not the same cannot be paired. Therefore, to use data replication, bind logical disks having the same capacity in advance.

# 5.1.5 Setting a Logical Disk Nickname

You need to set the logical disk name to change the nickname allocated at logical disk binding.

For specific procedure, refer to the following sections.

- Refer to 9.1.4 "Renaming a Logical Disk" to set a nickname.
- Refer to 9.1.5 "Nickname Batch Setting" to set multiple nicknames

### 5.1.6 Installing the Access Control

Install the Access Control. For specific procedures, refer to 5.4 "Access Control Installation".



# 5.2 Physical Disk Expansion

When expanding physical disks to the disk array in operation, make the settings basically in accordance with the following procedure.



In operating the program, bind/expand a pool or RANK. (For details, refer to 5.2.1 "Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK".)

In operating the program, if necessary, bind a logical disk. (For details, refer to 5.2.2 "Binding a Logical Disk".)

If necessary, change the Access Control configuration. (For details, refer to 5.2.3 "Changing the Access Control Configuration".)

# 5.2.1 Binding and Expanding a Pool or RANK

Build/expand a pool or RANK using the expanded physical disks.

For specific procedure, refer to the following sections.

For disk arrays with pool

- Refer to 7.1.1 "Binding a Pool" to build a new pool.
- Refer to 7.1.2 "Expanding Capacity of a Pool" to expand the existing pool.

For disk arrays with RANK

- Refer to 8.1.1 "RANK Bind" to build a new RANK.
- Refer to 8.1.3 "Expanding a RANK" to expand the existing RANK.



### 5.2.2 Binding a Logical Disk

Bind/expand a logical disk on the pool or RANK that was newly added or expanded.

For specific procedure, refer to the following sections.

To bind a logical disk only (individual setting)

- Refer to 7.2.1 "Binding Logical Disks" for disk arrays with pool.

- Refer to 8.2.1 "Binding Logical Disks" for disk arrays with RANK.

To bind a pool/RANK and logical disks (batch setting)

- Refer to 7.2.6 "Logical Disk Batch Setting" for disk arrays with pool.

- Refer to 8.2.4 "Logical Disk Batch Setting" for disk arrays with RANK.

To expand a logical disk (individual setting) - Refer to 7.2.2 "Expanding Capacity of Logical Disks" for disk arrays with pool.

Logical disks whose capacities are not the same cannot be paired. Therefore, to use data replication, bind logical disks having the same capacity in advance.

### 5.2.3 Changing the Access Control Configuration

Change the Access Control configuration. For specific procedures, refer to 5.6 "Access Control Configuration".

# 5.3 Logical Disk Configuration Changing

When changing the logical disk configuration, make the settings basically in accordance with the following procedure.



If necessary, unbind a logical disk. (For details, refer to 5.3.2 "Unbinding a Logical Disk".)

If necessary, unbind a pool or RANK. (For details, refer to 5.3.3 "Unbinding a Pool or RANK".)

If necessary, bind a pool or RANK. (For details, refer to 5.3.4 "Binding a Pool or RANK".)

If necessary, bind a logical disk. (For details, refer to 5.3.5 "Binding a Logical Disk".

If necessary, change the Access Control configuration. (For details, refer to 5.3.6 "Changing the Access Control Configuration".)

#### III-7

### 5.3.1 Deassigning a Logical Disk

Deassign a logical disk from the LD Set. For specific procedures, refer to 10.3.3 "Deassigning a Logical Disk".

#### 5.3.2 Unbinding a Logical Disk

Unbind a logical disk. The data saved in logical disks thus unbound are lost; be careful about this. Unbinding procedures differ depending on the disk array.

- Disk arrays with pool
  - S400/S1400/S2400/S2800
- Disk arrays with RANK Other than S400/S1400/S2400/S2800

For specific procedure, refer to the following sections.

- Refer to 7.2.3 "Unbinding Logical Disks" for disk arrays with pool.
- Refer to 8.2.2 "Unbinding Logical Disks" for disk arrays with RANK.

### 5.3.3 Unbinding a Pool or RANK

If necessary, unbind a pool or RANK. Logical disks on the pool or RANK are unbound; be careful about this.

For specific procedure, refer to the following sections.

- Refer to 7.1.3 "Unbinding a Pool" for disk arrays with pool.
- Refer to 8.1.2 "RANK Unbind" for disk arrays with RANK

### 5.3.4 Binding a Pool or RANK

If you have unbound the pool or RANK, re-bind another pool or RANK.

For specific procedure, refer to the following sections.

- Refer to 7.1.1 "Binding a Pool" for disk arrays with pool.
- Refer to 8.1.1 "RANK Bind" for disk arrays with RANK.

#### 5.3.5 Binding a Logical Disk

Bind a logical disk on the pool or RANK.

For specific procedure, refer to the following sections.

To bind a logical disk only (individual setting)

- Refer to 7.2.1 "Binding Logical Disks" for disk arrays with pool.

- Refer to 8.2.1 "Binding Logical Disks" for disk arrays with RANK.

To bind a pool/RANK and logical disks (batch setting)

- Refer to 7.2.6 "Logical Disk Batch Setting" for disk arrays with pool.

- Refer to 8.2.4 "Logical Disk Batch Setting" for disk arrays with RANK.

Logical disks whose capacities are not the same cannot be paired. Therefore, to use data replication, bind logical disks having the same capacity in advance.

# 5.3.6 Changing the Access Control Configuration

Change the Access Control configuration. For specific procedures, refer to 5.6 "Access Control Configuration Changing".

# 5.4 Access Control Installation

When initially installing Access Control, make the settings basically in accordance with the following procedure.



#### **III-10**

#### 5.4.1 Stopping the Server

Stop the business server connected to the disk array.

### 5.4.2 Setting a Disk Array

Depending on the operating environment, it is necessary to set the disk array. For information on the parameters, refer to 6.1 "Parameters". Before changing the settings, carefully read the disk array manual until they are fully understood. For how to set the disk array, refer to Chapter 9 "Configuration Setting (Common to All Units)".

# 5.4.3 Setting the Port Access Mode

Set the port access mode. Set the port mode to the WWN mode or Port mode depending on your operation. For specific procedures, refer to 10.1 "Changing the Port Mode".

#### 5.4.4 Creating an LD Set

Create an LD Set. Use the LD Set type supporting your business server OS. It is recommended to specify the business server name for the LD Set name. For specific procedures, refer to 10.2.1 "Setting an LD Set".

### 5.4.5 Linking an LD Set and Path

Link a path to the created LD Set. Link the WWPN for the HBA port in the business server to the LD Set in the WWN mode. Link the disk array port connected to the business server to the LD Set in the Port mode. For specific procedures, refer to 10.2.2 "Linking an LD Set and Path".

# 5.4.6 Assigning a Logical Disk

Assign a logical disk to the created LD Set. Assign the logical disk accessed from the business server to the LD Set. For specific procedures, refer to 10.3.1 "Assigning a New Logical Disk".



# 5.4.7 Starting the Access Control

Start the Access Control. Starting the Access Control activates its setting from the business server to the logical disk. For specific procedures, refer to 10.4 "Starting the Access Control".

. .

. .



Start the business server connected to the disk array.

#### III-12

# 5.5 Server Expansion

When expanding a server, make the settings basically in accordance with the following procedure.



Create an LD Set. (For details, refer to 5.5.2 "Creating an LD Set".)

Set links to the paths of LD Sets. (For details, refer to 5.5.3 "Linking an LD Set and Path".)

Assign a logical disk. (For details, refer to 5.5.4 "Assigning a Logical Disk".)

### 5.5.1 Setting the Port Access Mode

Set the port access mode. Set the port mode to the WWN mode or Port mode depending on your operation. For specific procedures, refer to 10.1 "Changing the Port Mode".

# 5.5.2 Creating an LD Set

Create an LD Set. Use the LD Set type supporting your business server OS. It is recommended to specify the business server name for the LD Set name. For specific procedures, refer to 10.2.1 "Setting an LD Set".

# 5.5.3 Linking an LD Set and Path

Link a path to the created LD Set. Link the WWPN for the HBA port in the business server to the LD Set in the WWN mode. Link the disk array port connected to the business server to the LD Set in the Port mode. For specific procedures, refer to 10.2.2 "Linking an LD Set and Path".

### 5.5.4 Assigning a Logical Disk

Assign a logical disk to the created LD Set. Assign the logical disk accessed from the business server to the LD Set. For specific procedures, refer to 10.3.1 "Assigning a New Logical Disk".

# 5.5.5 Restarting the Server

Restart the expanded business server.

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

### 5.6 Access Control Configuration Changing

When changing the Access Control configuration, make the settings basically in accordance with the following procedure.



#### III-15

#### 5.6.1 Stopping the Server

Stop the business server operation of which Access Control configuration will be changed.

#### 5.6.2 Deassigning a Logical Disk

Deassign a logical disk from the LD Set. For specific procedures, refer to 10.3.3 "Deassigning a Logical Disk".

# 5.6.3 Deleting an LD Set

Delete unnecessary LD Sets. For specific procedures, refer to 10.2.4 "Deleting an LD Set".

# 5.6.4 Creating an LD Set

Create an LD Set. Use the LD Set type supporting your business server OS. It is recommended to specify the business server name for the LD Set name. For specific procedures, refer to 10.2.1 "Setting an LD Set".

#### 5.6.5 Setting/Changing Link between an LD Set and Path

Link a path to the LD Set. Link the WWPN for the HBA port in the business server to the LD Set in the WWN mode. Link the disk array port connected to the business server to the LD Set in the Port mode. For specific procedures, refer to 10.2.2 "Linking an LD Set and Path".

### 5.6.6 Assigning a Logical Disk

Assign a logical disk to the LD Set. Assign the logical disk accessed from the business server to the LD Set. For specific procedures, refer to 10.3.1 "Assigning a New Logical Disk" and 10.3.2 "Assigning an Additional Logical Disk".

# 5.6.7 Restarting the Server

Restart the business server of which Access Control configuration was changed.

#### III-16

# Part IV Operations

# Chapter 6 Parameters

This chapter describes parameters.

# 6.1 Parameters

The disk arrays respectively have their own specific disk array settings and referenceable parameters. Table 6-1 lists the parameters specifiable and referenceable on each disk array series.

Sotting/Display Seroon	Setting/Display	Disk	Array S Name	Series
Setting/Display Screen	Parameter *1	400	1400/ 2400	2800
LD Batch Binding	LD Batch Binding	$\checkmark$		$\checkmark$
Nickname Batch Setting	Nickname Batch Setting	$\checkmark$		$\checkmark$
Replication Batch Setting	Replication Batch Setting	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
RANK/spare Setting	RANK Bind	-	-	-
	RANK Unbind			
RANK Information Display		-	-	-
	Capacity Expansion	-	-	-
	Change Rebuild Time	-	-	-
	Rebuild Start Instruction *2	-	-	-
	Spare Bind	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	
	Spare Unbind	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Physical Disk Information Display		$\checkmark$	
Pool Setting	Pool Bind			
	Pool Unbind			
	Pool Capacity Expansion			
	Change Pool Rebuild Time			
	Change Pool Expansion Time			
	Change Pool Name	$\checkmark$		$\checkmark$
	Pool Information Display	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Pool Setting (Snapshot)	Snapshot Reserve Area (SRA) Bind	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Snapshot Reserve Area (SRA) Unbind	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Snapshot Reserve Area (SRA) Expansion	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

 Table 6-1
 Setting/Display Parameter List (1/4)



Sotting/Dignlay/Sorgan	Satting/Dignlay Dependent #1	Disk Array Series Name			
Setting/Display Screen	Setting/Display Parameter +1	400	1400/ 2400	2800	
LD Setting	LD Bind			$\checkmark$	
	LD Unbind			$\checkmark$	
	LD Information Display	$\checkmark$			
	Change Ownership	-	-	-	
	Change Format Time				
	Change LD Name	$\checkmark$		$\checkmark$	
	Logical Disk Capacity Expansion	$\checkmark$			
LD Setting	Generation Adding	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$		
(Snapshot)	Generation Unbind				
	LV Binding		$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	
Nickname Setting	Setting/Displaying Disk Array Name				
	Setting/Displaying Port Name				
Platform Setting	Setting/Display Port Platform	$\checkmark$		$\checkmark$	
Network Setting	Setting/Display Disk Array Network	$\checkmark$		$\checkmark$	
License	Unlocking License			$\checkmark$	
Special Setting	Setting/Displaying Cross Call	_	-	-	
	Setting/Displaying Auto Assignment	-	_	_	
	Setting/Displaying Spare Mode	-	-		
	Setting/Displaying Expand LUN	-	-	-	
	Setting/Displaying Disk Array Time	$\checkmark$			
	Get Log *3	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	
Access Control Setting	Setting/Displaying Access Control	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	
LD Administrator Setting	Setting/Displaying Access Control	-	-		
	Initialization of Logical Disk	-	-	$\checkmark$	
	Initialization of EVN (Extended Volume Name)	-	-	$\checkmark$	
	Setting/Displaying of Performance Optimization	-	-	-	
Setting Cache Segment	Setting Cache Segment	-	-	$\checkmark$	
	Assigning Logical Disk /Freeing Logical Disk	-	-	$\checkmark$	
	Displaying Segment State	_	_		
Get Configuration Information	Get Configuration Information *3		$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	

 Table 6-1
 Setting/Display Parameter List (2/4)

 $\sqrt{}$ : Specifiable –: Not specifiable



Catting/Disclass	Sotting/Dignlay	Disk Array Series Name								
Screen	Parameter *1	1100	1200	100/ 1300	2100	2200	2300	3100/ 4100	3300/ 4300	
LD Batch Binding	LD Batch Binding							-	-	
Nickname Batch Setting	Nickname Batch Setting	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	
Replication Batch Setting	Replication Batch Setting	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	
RANK/spare	RANK Bind			$\checkmark$		$\checkmark$		_	-	
Setting	RANK Unbind			$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$		-	-	
	RANK Information Display	$\checkmark$	V	V	$\checkmark$	V	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	
	Capacity Expansion							-	-	
	Change Rebuild Time							-	-	
	Rebuild Start Instruction *2	$\checkmark$	V	V	$\checkmark$	V	$\checkmark$	-	-	
	Spare Bind							-	-	
	Spare Unbind		$\checkmark$		$\checkmark$			-	-	
	Physical Disk Information Display	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	
Pool Setting	Pool Bind	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
	Pool Unbind	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
	Pool Capacity Expansion	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
	Change Pool Rebuild Time	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
	Change Pool Expansion Time	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
	Change Pool Name	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
	Pool Information Display	-	-	_	-	-	-	-	-	
Pool Setting (Snapshot)	Snapshot Reserve Area (SRA) Bind	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	
	Snapshot Reserve Area (SRA) Unbind	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	_	
	Snapshot Reserve Area (SRA) Expansion	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD Setting	LD Bind							-	-	
	LD Unbind		$\checkmark$					-	-	
	LD Information Display		$\checkmark$							
	Change Ownership		$\checkmark$					-	-	
	Change Format Time							-	-	
	Change LD Name	_	_	_			_	_	_	
	Logical Disk Capacity Expansion	-	-	_	-	-	-	-	_	
LD Setting	Generation Adding	_	-	_	-	-	-	-	-	
(Snapshot)	Generation Unbind	_	-	_	_	_	_	_	_	
	LV Binding	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Table 6-1 Setting/Display Parameter List (3/4)

		Disk Array Series Name							
Setting/Display Screen	Setting/Display Parameter *1	1100	1200	100/ 1300	2100	2200	2300	3100/ 4100	3300/ 4300
Nickname Setting	Setting/Displaying Disk Array Name	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	V	V	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Setting/Displaying Port Name	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Platform Setting	Setting/Display Port Platform	I	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$		1
Network Setting	Setting/Display Disk Array Network	I	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$		1
License	Unlocking License	-	_		—	-		-	
Special Setting	Setting/Displaying Cross Call	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	Ι	Ι
	Setting/Displaying Auto Assignment	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	_	_
	Setting/Displaying Spare Mode	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	_
	Setting/Displaying Expand LUN	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-
	Setting/Displaying Disk Array Time	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-
	Get Log *3	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	-	-
Access Control Setting	Setting/Displaying Access Control	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
LD Administrator Setting	Setting/Displaying Access Control	-	_	-	_	_	_	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Initialization of Logical Disk	-	-	-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Initialization of EVN (Extended Volume Name)	-	_	-	_	_	_	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Setting/Displaying of Performance Optimization	-	-	-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Setting Cache Segment	Setting Cache Segment	-	-	_	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Assigning Logical Disk /Freeing Logical Disk	_	_	_	_	_	_	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
	Displaying Segment State	_	-	-	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
Get Configuration Information	Get Configuration Information *3	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$

Table 6-1 Setting/Display Parameter List (4/4)

 $\sqrt{}$ : Specifiable –: Not specifiable

Notes:

- \*1: To set the parameters, your user level needs to be L3 (level 3). However, it is allowed for any user whose user level is L1 (level 1) or L2 (level 2) to display the parameters in reference mode. For information about the operation levels, refer to 6.2 "Operating Range".
- \*2: While the Rebuild Start Instruction parameter can also be operated in reference mode, your user level needs to be L3 (level 3).
- \*3: The Get Log and Get Configuration Information parameters can also be operated in reference mode.

# 6.2 Operating Range

Set level 1 to 3 as a user level. The following shows target users and executable functions at each level:

• Level 1 (L1):

This level is defined for general users. The users are permitted to perform only reference operation focusing on status display or monitoring.

• Level 2 (L2):

This level is defined for operators. The operators are permitted to perform the level 1 operations and execute functions necessary for daily operations.

• Level 3 (L3):

This level is defined for system administrators. The system administrators are permitted to execute all functions including various settings for disk arrays.

After connection to the iSM server, the user level is displayed on the status bar of the iSM client. Each user can use the functions allowed for the indicated level only.


# Chapter 7 Disk Array Configuration Setting (S400/S1400/S2400/S2800)

This chapter describes how to set the configuration of the disk array in S400/S1400/S2400/S2800. For configuration setting in S100/S1100/S1200/S1300/S2100/S2200/S2300, refer to Chapter 8.

# 7.1 Pool Binding

Specify the physical disks of the disk array to be put in the RAID configuration and assign the RAID type to bind a pool. Then, bind the logical disks to the pool to bind the logical disks. In addition, bind a control volume individually. A control volume is a volume for control over snapshot operation. (For the details of control volumes, refer to "Snapshot User's Manual (Function Guide)" (IS030).)

After adding physical disks, take the steps stated above to the added physical disks to bind the logical disks. Adding physical disks puts no influence on any existing logical disks, which belongs to the pool and already in use. Adding and binding logical disks to the pool also puts no influence on any existing logical disks.

Pools are classified into two types; the dynamic pool allows expanding the capacity of the pool and the logical disks, and the basic pool does not allow expanding the capacity of the pool and the logical disks.

The logical disk configurations selectable by the pool are as follows:

Logical disk configuration: Dynamic pool RAID6 (4+PQ)/(8+PQ)

Basic pool RAID1 (1+1) Basic pool RAID5 (4+P) Basic pool RAID10 (1+1)  $\times 2/(1+1) \times 4/(1+1) \times 8$ Basic pool RAID50 (4+P)  $\times 2/(4+P) \times 4$ 

Bind logical disks in accordance with the following procedure.

- (1) Pool Bind
- (2) LD Bind

# 7.1.1 Binding a Pool

Bind a pool through wizard. Bind a new pool following the steps indicated on the wizard.

#### (1) Starting up the pool binding wizard

Click the [Pool Binding] button in the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

🚰 LD Individual Bind/Unbind					×
Configuration list					
S2800/0037 Ponanic Pool O001h Basic Pool Spare Unused	Pool configurat mber Pool Name R 0001h Pool0001	tion information an AID Capacity[CB] 6 396.0	d setting. Used Capacity[GB] 175.0	(Number of Pools : 1) Snapshot Capacity[( 2	
C	apacity <u>E</u> xpansion	. Change ]	[ime	Change N <u>a</u> me	
	SRA E <u>xp</u> ansion	Change Thr	esh <u>e</u> ld	SRA Un <u>b</u> ind	
				Pool <u>U</u> nbind	
Binding Wizard Binding operations with wizard.	Pool Binding.	<u>L</u> D	Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding	1
	S <u>B</u> A Binding.	<u>G</u> enera	tion Adding	L <u>Y</u> Binding	
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo		Close		Help	

Figure 7-1 Starting Up Pool Binding Wizard

### (2) Setting about the pool binding wizard

Clicking the [Pool Binding] button on the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen displays the "Welcome to the Pool Binding Wizard" screen.



Figure 7-2 Setting About Pool Binding Wizard

- [Next] button: Displays the "Pool Selection" screen.
- [Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.

### (3) Selecting the pool type

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Welcome to the Pool Binding Wizard" screen displays the "Pool Selection" screen.

Pool Binding Wizard(2/7)
Pool Selection Select Pool type for binding.
Select Pool type for binding. • Dynamic • B <u>a</u> sic
Description Dynamic - Dynamic Pool supports RAID6(8+PQ),RAID6(4+PQ). - Dynamic Pool has two redundant PDs, so it can work even if two PDs failure has occurred. - Dynamic Pool can extend own capacity by adding PDs. - LDs, bound in Dynamic Pool, can extend own capacity dynamically. Basic - Basic Pool supports RAID1,RAID10,RAID5,RAID50. - It is necessary for change configuration to unbind the Pool, and re-bind the Pool with new parameter.
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help

Figure 7-3 Selecting Pool Type

You can bind a pool of either of the following types with a fixed RAID configuration:

Dynamic:	RAID6 (8+PQ) or RAID6(4+PQ) is allowed.
	The dynamic pool and its logical disks are easy to expand.
Basic:	RAID1, RAID10, RAID5, or RAID50 is allowed.
	It is not allowed to expand any basic pool and its logical disks.
[Next] button:	Displays the "RAID Type Selection" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Welcome to the Pool Binding Wizard" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes
	if agreed.

### (4) Selecting the RAID type

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Pool Selection" screen displays the "RAID Type Selection" screen.

Pool B	inding Wizard(3/7)	×
R	AID Type Selection Select RAID type for Pool binding.	
	Select RAID type for Pool binding.	
	• $[\text{RAID6}(8+\underline{P}\underline{Q})]$ C RAID6(4+P $\underline{Q}$ )	
-D	C RAID1 C RAID10 C RAID5 C RAID50	_
- PE - RA - PE -	With the configuration which doubled parity to RAID5, the number of os becomes ten or more pieces. Pool capacity becomes 8/10 of total for the number of PDs. ID6(4+PQ) With the configuration which doubled parity to RAID5, the number of os becomes six or more pieces. Pool capacity is set to four sixths of total for the number of PDs.	
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help	

Figure 7-4 Selecting RAID Type (for Dynamic Pool)



ool Binding Wizard(3/7)
RAID Type Selection Select RAID type for Pool binding.
Select RAID type for Pool binding. C RAID6(8420) C RAID6(44PQ) C RAID1 C RAID5 C RAID50 Description RAID1 - It is mirroring consist of two PDs. - Pool capacity becomes the value equal to one PD's. RAID10 - It performs striping for data and distributes on PD(4,8 and 16pieces) of two or more RAID1. - Pool capacity becomes one half of total for the number of PDs. RAID5 - Five PDs are configured including one parity. Striping of data and the parity is carried out, and it distributes on each disk. - Pool capacity becomes four PDs. RAID50 - It performs striping for data and distributes on PD(10 and 20pieces) of two or more RAID5. - Pool capacity is set to four fifths of total for the number of PDs.
< Back Next > Cancel Help

Figure 7-5 Selecting RAID Type (for Basic Pool)

RAID type radio button: Put a checkmark on the RAID type of the pool you want to bind. The selections depend on the type you specified on the "Pool Selection" screen.
[Next] button: Displays the "PD Selection" screen.
[Back] button: Displays back the "Pool Selection" screen.
[Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.

### (5) Selecting physical disks

Clicking the [Next] button on the "RAID Type Selection" screen displays the "PD Selection" screen.

Pool Binding Wizard	d(4/7)			×
PD Selection Select PD for	Pool binding.			
Select s RAID Typ	ome PDs from list f e : 5	or Pool bi	nding.	
-Unused PDs-	(Number of PDs : 7)	)	-Pool PDs-	(Number of PDs : 2)
Number	Capacity[GB]		Number	Capacity[GB]
🔐 00h-06h	66.6	$\rightarrow$	🔐 00h-02h	66.6
💕 00h-07h	66.6	Add	🔐 00h-03h	66.6
🔐 00h-08h	66.6		[	
💕 00h-0ah	66.6			
🔐 00h-0bh	66.6			
🔐 00h-0ch	66.6	Delete		
100h-0dh	66.6			
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel Help

Figure 7-6 Selecting Physical Disks

Unused PDs:	Lists physical disks still unused.
Pool PDs:	Lists the physical disks to use for the pool.
[Add] button:	Select unused physical disks to use for the pool, then click this button to add them to the pool.
[Delete] button:	Select any physical disks to be removed from the pool, then click this button. The selected physical disks are restored as unused.
[Next] button:	Displays the "Detail Parameter Setting for Pool Binding" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "RAID Type Selection" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.

If no RAID type is available for the pool with the physical disks you selected, any of the [25201], [25202], or [25227] message box is displayed as follows:.



Figure 7-7 Message Box



### (6) Setting detailed parameters

Clicking the [Next] button on the "PD Selection" screen displays the "Detail Parameter Setting for Pool Binding" screen.

Pool Binding Wizard(5/7)
Detail Parameter Setting for Pool Binding Set Pool name and rebuilding time.
Pool Name Pool0000
Description Nickname setting for Pool is available. It can set up by 32 characters of arbitrary alphanumeric characters, '/', and '_'.
Rebuild Time (0-24)
When the PD failure has occurred in a Pool, rebuild to a Spare PD is started automatically. Set rebuilding time. Rebuilding will execute with fastest time selected by value '0'.
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help

Figure 7-8 Setting Detailed Parameters

Pool Name: Specify the name of the pool. This screen initially puts the name automatically assigned in the form of "Pool" + Number (hexadecimal, 4 digits) in the field. Note that you cannot specify any name already used in the disk array.

Any pool name that does not confor	m to the follow	ving rules is invalid:
Any poor name that does not conton		ving rules is invalid.
• Number of available characters:	1 to 24 chara	cters
• Available characters:	Alphabet:	A to Z (a to z)
		* Upper- and lower-case characters are distinguished.
	Numerals:	0 to 9
	Underbar:	_
	Slash:	/
* All the characters must be 1-byte	characters.	



For an invalid pool name, any of the [25203], [25204], or [25205] message box is displayed as follows:

Figure 7-9 Message Box

- Rebuild Time: Specify the duration of time to do rebuild if a physical disk becomes faulty. You can specify 0 to 24 hours. Although specifying 0 rebuilds the faulty disk in the shortest time, select an appropriate time taking account of the load to the host I/O. The time specified in the field is just a target, thus it is not assured to take the specified time.
- [Next] button: Displays the "Confirmation for Pool Binding Parameter" screen.
- [Back] button: Displays back the "PD Selection" screen.
- [Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



### (7) Checking for the parameters specified for the pool

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Detail Parameter Setting for Pool Binding" screen displays the "Confirmation for Pool Binding Parameter" screen.

Pool Binding Wizard(6/7)				×
Confirmation for Pool Bind Pool binding parameter.	ling Parameter			
Pool binding pars	ameter.			
Pool Type	: Basic			
RAID Type	: 5			
Pool Number	: 0000h			
Pool Name	: Pool0000			
Pool Capacity	: 266.7 GB	(286,404,902,912	Bytes)	
Rebuild Time	: 12 h			
-Pool PDs-		(Number	of PDs : 5)	
Number	Capacity[GB]			
🔐 00h-02h	66.6			
🔐 00h-03h	66.6			
00h-07h	66.6			
00h-08h	66.6			
00h-0ah	66.6			
Click Next to sta parameter change and change the pa	art Pool bindin , click Back to arameter.	ng. Pool binding o return to suit	will start. able setting	In case of g screen,
	< <u>B</u> ac	⊳k <u>N</u> ext>	Cancel	Help

Figure 7-10 Checking for Parameters Specified for Pool

Pool Type:	Type of the pool
RAID Type:	RAID type of the pool
Pool Number:	Number of the pool to bind
Pool Name:	Name of the pool to bind
Pool Capacity:	Capacity of the pool to bind
Rebuild Time:	Duration of time to rebuild the pool
Pool PDs:	List of physical disks that bind the pool

Number of PDs:	Number	of physical	disks	that bind	the pool
----------------	--------	-------------	-------	-----------	----------

[Next] button: Displays a message asking you to proceed.

[Back] button: Displays back the "Detail Parameter Setting for Pool Binding" screen.

[Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



Figure 7-11 Message Box to Start Binding Pool





### (8) Finishing binding the pool

When the pool is successfully bound, the following screen is displayed:

Pool Binding Wizard(7/7)	×
Pool Binding Complete Pool binding complete.	
You have successfully completed the Pool Binding wizard.	
To close this wizard, click Finish.	
< <u>B</u> ack <b>[Finish</b> ] Cancel	Help

Figure 7-13 Pool Successfully Bound

[Finish] button: Closes the wizard.



# 7.1.2 Expanding Capacity of a Pool

You can expand	the capacity	of a pool t	from the "L	D Individual	Bind/Unbind"	screen.
1	1 2	1				

Configuration list	onfiguration list							
S2800/0037         Dynamic Pool         Dolonh         Basic Pool         Spre         Unused         Number Pool Name RAID Capacity(CE) Used Capacity(CE) Snapshot Capacity(C         Dolonh Pool0001         6         396.0         175.0         Capacity [Xpansion         Change Time         StA Egypansion         Change Threshold         StA Egypansion         Change Threshold         Pool Unbind	S2800/0037							
Pool Pool Pool Pool Pool configuration information and setting. (Number of Pools : 1) Pool configuration information and setting. (Number of Pools : 1) Number Pool Name PAID Capacity(CB) Used Capacity(CB) Snapshot Capacity(C) Odolh Pool0001 6 396.0 175.0 Capacity Expansion Capacity Expansion Change Timeshold SRA Expansion SRA Expansion Change Timeshold Pool Unbind	En SZ80070037	neel l						
Pool configuration information and setting.       (Number of Pools : 1)         Number       Pool Name       PAID       Capacity[GB]       Used       Snapshot       Capacity[G]         0001h       Pool Name       PAID       Capacity[GB]       Used       Capacity[GB]       Snapshot       Capacity[G]         0001h       Pool Name       PAID       Capacity[GB]       Used       Capacity[G]       Snapshot       Capacity[G]         0001h       Pool 0001       6       396.0       175.0       175.0         Image:       Capacity       Expansion       Change       The content of t		P001						
Pool configuration information and setting. (Number of Pools : 1) Pool Configuration information and setting. (Number of Pools : 1) Number Pool Name PAID Capacity[GB] Used Capacity[GB] Shapshot Capacity[(  0001h Pool0001 6 396.0 175.0 Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Timeshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind	0001h	PLZ						
Spare         Unused         Number       Pool Name         RAID       Capacity[GB]         Unused             0001h       Pool O001         6       396.0             1001h       Pool O001             1001h       Pool O001 <td>Basic Pool</td> <td></td> <td>Pool configu</td> <td>ration i</td> <td>nformation an</td> <td>d setting.</td> <td>(Number of Pools : 1)</td> <td></td>	Basic Pool		Pool configu	ration i	nformation an	d setting.	(Number of Pools : 1)	
Number       Pool Name       RAID       Capacity[GB]       Used Capacity[GB]       Snapshot Capacity[G         0001h       Pool0001       6       396.0       175.0         1        Capacity Expansion       Change Time       Change Name         SRA Expansion       Change Threshold       SRA Unbind       Pool Unbind	j Spare							
© 0001h Pool0001       6       396.0       175.0       8         Image: State Supervision	- Onused	Number	Pool Name	RAID	Capacity[GB]	Used Capacity[GB]	Snapshot Capacity[(	
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind		0001	h Pool0001	6	396.0	175.0	2	
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion Change Time Change Name SRA Expansion Change Threshold SRA Unbind Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion       Change Time       Change Name         SRA Expansion       Change Threshold       SRA Unbind         Pool Unbind       Pool Unbind								
Capacity Expansion       Change Time       Change Name         SRA Expansion       Change Threshold       SRA Unbind         Pool Unbind       Pool Unbind								
SRA Egpension Change Threshgld SRA Unbind Pool Unbind		1					<u> </u>	
SHA Expension         Unange Inteshold         Ska Ungind           Pool Unbind		Capac	ity <u>E</u> xpansior		Change (	[ime	Change Name	
Pool Unbind		Capac	ity <u>R</u> xpansior	<u></u>	Change j	<u></u>	▶ Change N <u>a</u> me	
		Capac	ity <u>E</u> xpansion	<b>1</b>	Change ; Change Thr	fime	Change N <u>a</u> me SRA Un <u>b</u> ind	
		Capac STA	ity <u>E</u> xpansion : E <u>x</u> pansion	a	Change ; Change Thr	time	Change Name SRA Unbind Pool <u>U</u> nbind	
		Capac	ity <u>Expansion</u> . Expansion	n	Change ; Change Thr	time	Change Name SRA Unbind Pool <u>U</u> nbind	
nding Wizard		Capac	ity Expansion	· · · ·	Change ; Change Thr	time	Change Name SRA Unbind Pool <u>U</u> nbind	
binding operations with wizard. <u>P</u> ool Binding <u>LD Binding</u> <u>Spare Binding</u>	nding Wizard	Capac StA	ity Expansion	a	Change (	time	Change Name SRA Unbind Pool <u>U</u> nbind	
S <u>R</u> A Binding <u>G</u> eneration Adding L <u>V</u> Binding	nding Wizard	Capac SR vizard.	ity <u>E</u> xpansion : E <u>xpansion</u> <u>P</u> ool Bindi	h	Change j Change Thr	Time	Change Ngme SRA Unbind Pool Unbind	
	nding Wizard	Capac Sth	ity <u>Expansion</u> . Expansion, . <u>P</u> ool Bindi SEA Bindir	ng	Change ; Change Thr Change Thr	fime eshgld Binding tion Adding	Change Name SRA Unbind Pool Unbind Spare Binding Ly Binding	
	nding Wizard	Vizard.	ity <u>Expansion</u> . Expansion <u>P</u> ool Bindin SRA Bindin	n	Change ; Change Thr Change Thr LD Cenera	fime eshgld Binding tion Adding	Change Name SRA Unbind Pool Unbind Spare Binding Ly Binding	

Figure 7-14 Expanding the Pool Capacity

#### <Steps for expanding the capacity of a pool>

- 1. Select Dynamic Pool to be expanded in the configuration tree view.
- 2. Select a dynamic pool to be expanded from the list of pools in the detailed information view.
- 3. Click the [Capacity Expansion] button.
- 4. A dialog box for expanding the capacity of a pool appears.



Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

nend Rool cer	necity		
pand Foor Caj	pacity.		
ol Informati	on		
lumber :	0000h		
Jame :	Poo10000		
apacity :	264.0 GB (283	,467,841,536 Bytes)	
WAID Type :	6(4+PQ)		
pansion Meth	od		
• Without <u>P</u> oo	ol Rebuilding	Expansion does not obstruct access t complete in an instant.	to LD, in order to
) With Poo <u>l</u> 1	rebuilding	Method expand Pool capacity efficies	ntly.
Specify	Expansion Tim	.e	
Tamongio	n Timo /0-255	A h /Tf 0 is specified	operator by the factort
Expansio	n Time (0-255	) 4 h (If 0 is specified,	operates by the fastest.
Expansio	n Time (0-255 or Expansion-	) 4 The (If 0 is specified,	operates by the fastest.
Expansio lection PD fo Unused PDs-	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified,	operates by the fastest.
Expensio lection PD fo Unused PDs- Number C	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB]	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number	Operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB]
Expansio lection PD f Unused PDs- Number 0 00h-02h	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB] 67.1	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number	Operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB] 67.1
Expensio lection PD f Unused PDs- Number 0 00h-02h 00h-03h	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h 00h-01h	<pre>operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1</pre>
Expensio	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h Add 00h-06h	<pre>operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1</pre>
Expensio	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number Pooh-Oh Add Ooh-Oh Ooh-Oh Ooh-Oh	<pre>operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1</pre>
Expensio	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h 2 dd 00h-00h 00h-00h 00h-00h 00h-00h 00h-00h 00h-07h 00h-08h	<pre>operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB]</pre>
Expensio	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h 2dd 00h-06h 00h-08h 00h-09h	<pre>operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1</pre>
Expansio	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB]) 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h 200h-01h 200h-02h 00h-09h Delete	Operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1
Expansio	n Time (0-255 or Expansion- (Number Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	) 4 2 h (If 0 is specified, of PDs : 6) -Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h Add 00h-00h 00h-09h Delete Numb	operates by the fastest. (Number of PDs : 6 Capacity[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 07.1

Figure 7-15 Pool Capacity Expansion Dialog

Pool Information

Name: Name of the pool

Capacity: Current capacity of the pool

RAID Type: Current RAID type

### Expansion Method

Without Pool Rebuilding:Allows expanding the capacity of the pool without any influence to the existing<br/>logical disks. For a pool in a configuration of RAID6 (4+PQ), 6 or more<br/>physical disks are needed. For a pool in a configuration of RAID6 (8+PQ), 10<br/>or more physical disks are needed.

With Pool rebuilding	g: Allows expanding the capacity of the pool without any restriction on the number of the logical disks, in a relatively longer time.
Specify Expansion T	Time: Allows specifying the duration of time to expand the all physical disks only when you specified "With Pool Rebuilding". Although specifying 0 expands the capacity in the shortest time, select an appropriate time taking account of the load to the host I/O. The time specified in the field is just a target, thus it is not assured to take the specified time.
Selection PD for Expan	nsion
Unused PDs:	Lists disks still unused.
Pool PDs:	List of disks that will compose the pool after expansion
Number of Adding I	PDs: Number of physical disks to be added to the pool
[Add] button:	Select unused physical disks to use for the pool in the "Unused PD" list, then click this button to add them to the pool.
[Delete] button:	Select any physical disks to be removed from the pool in the "to Pool" list, then click this button. The selected physical disks are restored to the list of unused physical disks. * It is not allowed to select any physical disks already put in the other pools.

Clicking the [OK] button displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to expand the capacity of the pool.

If the physical disks selected are insufficient for the expansion, either of the [25218] or [25227] message box is displayed as follows:



Figure 7-16 Message Box



onfirm Pool Cap	oacity Expar	nsion	×
<b>D</b> 1			
Pool capaci	ty will b	e expa	panded with following parameters.
Number	:	0000	00h
Name	:	Pool	010000
Before Expanding C	apacity :	264.	4.0 GB (283,467,841,536 Bytes)
After Expanding C	apacity :	308.	8.0 GB (330,712,481,792 Bytes)
Rebinding	:	With	th re-binding
Expansion T	'ime :	4 h	h
Number of P	Ds Before	Expan	ansion : 6
Selected PD	s for Poo	l Bind	nding : l
Number of P	Ds After	Expans	nsion : 7
			(Number of DDc : 7)
-Pool PDs-			(Number of PDS . /)
-Pool PDs- Number	Capacity	7[GB]	
-Pool PDs- Number	Capacity	7[GB] 67.1	
-Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h	Capacity	7[GB] 67.1 67.1	
-Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h 00h-01h 00h-01h	Capacity	7[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1	
-Pool PDS- Number 00h-00h 00h-01h 00h-02h 00h-02h 00h-03h	Capacity	7[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	
-Pool PDS- Number 00h-00h 00h-01h 00h-02h 00h-03h 00h-04h	Capacity	67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	
-Pool PDS- Number 00h-00h 00h-01h 00h-02h 00h-03h 00h-03h 00h-05h 00h-05h	Capacity	7[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	
-Pool PDS- Number 00h-00h 00h-01h 00h-02h 00h-03h 00h-04h 00h-05h 00h-08h	Capacity	7[GB] 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	
-Pool PDs- Number 00h-00h 00h-01h 00h-02h 00h-03h 00h-03h 00h-04h 00h-05h	Capacity	r(GB) 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1 67.1	it ok to start expand Pool acity?

Figure 7-17 Message for Asking Expansion of Pool Capacity

Information about the pool:

Number:	Number of the pool
Name:	Name of the pool
Before Expanding Capacity:	Capacity of the pool before expansion
After Expanding Capacity:	Capacity of the pool after expansion
Rebinding:	Way of expanding the capacity of the pool
Expansion Time:	Duration of time to expand the physical disks



Information about the physical disks:

Number of PDs Before Expansion:	Number of physical disks that compose the pool before expansion
Selected PDs for Pool Binding:	Number of physical disks to be added to expand the pool
Number of PDs After Expansion:	Number of physical disks that are composing the pool after expansion
Pool PDs:	List of physical disks that will compose the pool after expansion
[Yes] button:	Starts expanding the capacity of the pool
[No] button:	Returns to the "Pool Capacity Expansion" dialog box.
\ \	
ficient license capacity	
nding a pool may result in insufficiency	of license capacity. For insufficiency of license capacity, refer to
IV-19.	

Insufficient license capacity Expanding a pool may result in insufficiency of license capacity. For insufficiency of license capacity, refer to Page IV-19.

5. When the pool is successfully expanded, the following message is displayed.



Figure 7-18 Message for Successful Completion of Expanding Pool

## 7.1.3 Unbinding a Pool

You can unbind a pool from the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

🚰 LD Individual Bind/Unbind					×
Configuration list					
S2800/0037	Pool				
Dynamic Pool	Pool configur: Number Pool Name	ation information an RAID Capacity(GB) 6 396.0	d setting. Used Capacity[GB] 175.0	(Number of Pools : 1) Snapshot Capacity[(	
	•			Þ	
	Capacity <u>R</u> xpansion.	Change j		Change N <u>a</u> me	
	SRA E <u>m</u> pansion	Change Thr	esh <u>o</u> ld	SRA Un <u>b</u> ind	
				Pool <u>U</u> nbind	
Binding Wizard					
Binding operations with wize	ard. <u>P</u> ool Bindin	д <u>Г</u> D	Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding	
	S <u>R</u> å Binding	J	tion Adding	L <u>V</u> Binding	
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo		Close		Help	

Figure 7-19 Unbinding a Pool

#### <Steps for unbinding a pool>

- 1. Select Basic Pool or Dynamic Pool in the configuration tree view.
- 2. Select a pool to be unbound from the list of pools in the detailed information view.
- 3. Click the [Pool Unbind] button.

4. A message box asking you to unbind the pool is displayed.



Figure 7-20 Message Box for Unbinding a Pool

When the pool to be unbound has logical disks already bound, the following dialog box is displayed to ask you to unbind the logical disks together, unbinding the pool.

Confirm I	Pool a	and LD Unbir	nding	×
Unbin	Iding	f followin	g Pool and LDs will st	art.
Numbe	r :	0000h		
Name	:	Poo10000		
-Logi	.cal	Disk-	(Num	ber of LDs : 1)
Numk	er	OS Type	LD Name	Capacity[GB]
🔐 O 3	34h		200000004C7F3E2D0334	1.0
⚠	Unk be	oinding Po unbound a	ol means that LDs in t t same time.	he Pool will
	Is	it ok to	unbind?	
		<u>Y</u> es		<u>&gt;</u>

Figure 7-21 Message for Unbinding a Pool and Logical Disks

You cannot unbind the pool if any of the logical disks in it are:
In Access Control (Port mode).
In Access Control (WWN mode).
Paired.
SRA bound (snapshot).
Link setting is performed (snapshot).
Assigned to a cache segment (setting cache segment).
A reserve group is set (LD Administrator).
To unbind the pool, be sure to release the logical disks in the states mentioned above, if any.

5. When the pool is successfully unbound, the following message is displayed. When the logical disks are unbound together, a message is displayed for successful completion of unbinding the logical disks first, then a message is displayed for successful completion of unbinding the pool.



Figure 7-22 Message for Successful Completion of Unbinding Logical Disks



Figure 7-23 Message for Successful Completion of Unbinding Pool



X

Help

# 7.1.4 Renaming a Pool

	You can rename a pool	from	the "LD Individual Bi	nd/Unbind" sc	reen.	
12	LD Individual Bind/Unbind					
	-Configuration list					
	S2800/0037	Pool	Pool configuration	information ar	d setting.	(Number of Pools : 1)
	_		Der Pool Name RAID	capacity[GB]	Used Lapacity[GB]	Snapsnot tapacity[t
		•				Þ
		Cap	acity <u>E</u> xpansion	Change .	<u>T</u> ime	Change N <u>a</u> me
		:	SRA E <u>xp</u> ansion	Change Thr	esh <u>o</u> ld	SRA Unbind
						Pool <u>U</u> nbind
	Binding Wizard					
	Binding operations with wiz:	ard.	Pool Binding	LD	Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding
				1		

Figure 7-24 Renaming a Pool

Close

#### <Steps for renaming a pool>

Get Disk Array I<u>n</u>fo

- 1. Select Basic Pool or Dynamic Pool in the configuration tree view.
- Select a pool to be renamed from the list of pools in the detailed information view. 2.
- 3. Click the [Change Name] button.

4. A dialog box for renaming a pool appears.

Setting Pool N	ame		×
Number	:	0000h	
Name	:	Poo10000	
New Name	:		
[	0	ĸ	Cancel

Figure 7-25 Dialog Box for Renaming a Pool

New Name: Specify the new name to be assigned to the pool.

For details on how to rename a pool, refer to "Pool Name" in 7.1.1 (6) "Setting detailed parameters".

5. When the pool is successfully renamed, the following message box is displayed.



Figure 7-26 Message for Successful Completion of Renaming a Pool



## 7.1.5 Changing Rebuild Time and Expansion Time of a Pool

You can change the rebuild time and expansion time of a pool from the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

🚰 LD Individual Bind/Unbind					×
Configuration list					
S2800/0037     Pool       Pynamic Pool     Pool       Pool     Pool       Pasic Pool     Pool       Spare     Pool	1 Pool configuration	on information an	d setting.	(Number of Pools : 1)	
Unused N	umber Pool Name RAI	D Capacity[GB]	Used Capacity[GB]	Snapshot Capacity[(	
				F	
	Capacity <u>E</u> xpansion	Change ]	ime	Change N <u>a</u> me	
	SRA E <u>xp</u> ansion	Change Thr	esh <u>o</u> ld	SRA Unbind	
				Pool <u>U</u> nbind	
Binding Wizard					
Binding operations with wizard	. <u>P</u> ool Binding	. <u>L</u> D	Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding	
	S <u>R</u> A Binding	Genera	tion Adding	L <u>V</u> Binding	
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo		Close		Help	

Figure 7-27 Changing the Rebuild Time and Expansion Time of a Pool

#### <Steps for the rebuild/expansion time of a pool>

- 1. Select Basic Pool or Dynamic Pool in the configuration tree view.
- 2. Select a pool whose time setting is to be changed from the list of pools in the detailed information view.
- 3. Click the [Change Time] button.

4. A dialog box for changing the rebuild/expansion time of a pool appears.

Change Pool Rebuild/Expansion Ti	ime 🗙
Pool rebuild time and exp (If O is specified, opera Pool Information	band time can be changed. ates by the fastest.)
Number : 0000h	
Name : Pool00	000
Rebuild Time : 23 h	
Expansion Time : 3 h	
Rebuild Time	Expansion Time
<u>R</u> ebuild Time (0-24)	<u>E</u> xpansion Time (0-255)
23 • h	8 <del>*</del> h
OK	Cancel

Figure 7-28 Change Pool Rebuild/Expansion Time Dialog

Pool Information:

Number:	Number of the pool
Name:	Name of the pool
Rebuild Time:	Current duration of time specified to rebuild the pool
Expansion Time:	Current duration of time specified to expand the pool (selectable only when expanding the pool)
Rebuild Time:	Specify the duration of time to rebuild the pool. Specify the duration of time to do rebuild if a physical disk becomes faulty in the disk array. You can specify 0 to 24 hours. Although specifying 0 rebuilds the faulty disk in the shortest time, select an appropriate time taking account of the load to the host I/O. The time specified in the field is just a target, thus it is not assured to take the specified time.

Expansion Time:Specify the duration of time to expand the (Only Dynamic Pool) pool.<br/>You can specify the duration of time to expand the physical disks added to the pool.<br/>Although specifying 0 expands the pool in the shortest time, select an appropriate time<br/>taking account of the load to the host I/O. The time specified in the field is just a target,<br/>thus it is not assured to take the specified time.

- 5. Put a checkmark on the item you want to change, then specify the time.
- 6. When the time is successfully changed, the following message is displayed:



Figure 7-29 Message for Successful Completion of Changing Time

# 7.2 Method of Binding Logical Disks

Bind logical disks of the disk array in accordance with the following procedure in terms of each PD group.

(1) Spare Bind

It is necessary to set Spares in accordance with their applications. For information on Spares, refer to 2.3 "Spare".

(2) Pool/RANK Bind

After considering the RAID characteristics, bind the RAID type pools suitable to the application. Refer to Appendix C "RAID" for the types of RAID.

In pool or RANK binding, pay attention to the fact that the maximum capacity of the logical disk is less than the pool or RANK capacity.

(3) LD Bind

Bind the logical disk with the most suitable capacity in accordance with its application. It is impossible to set a pair unless the logical disk capacity is the same; therefore, when using data replications, it is necessary to bind logical disks of the same capacity beforehand.



. .

# 7.2.1 Binding Logical Disks

Bind logical disks through wizard. Bind logical disks to a specified pool following the steps indicated on the wizard. To bind a control volume, follow this procedure.

### (1) Starting up the LD binding wizard

Click the [LD Binding] button in the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

👺 LD Individual Bind/Unbind					×
Configuration list					
S2800/0037 Dynamic Pool Dolh Basic Pool Offh Spare Unused	ool Pool configuration Number Pool Name RAJ 0001h Pool0001	on information and D Capacity[CB] 6 396.0	d setting. Used Capacity[GB] 175.0	(Number of Pools : 1) Snapshot Capacity[(	
	Capacity <u>E</u> xpansion	Change <u>T</u>	ime	Change N <u>a</u> me	
	SRA E <u>x</u> pansion	Change Thre	esh <u>o</u> ld	SRA Un <u>b</u> ind	
				Pool <u>U</u> nbind	
Binding Wizard					
Binding operations with wizar	rd. <u>P</u> ool Binding	. <u>L</u> D	Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding	
	S <u>R</u> A Binding	Generat	ion Adding	L <u>V</u> Binding	
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo		Close		Help	

Figure 7-30 Starting Up Wizard for Binding Logical Disks



### (2) Setting about the LD binding wizard

Clicking the [LD Binding] button on the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen displays the "Welcome to the LD Binding Wizard" screen.



Figure 7-31 Setting about Wizard for Binding Logical Disks

- [Next] button: Displays the "Pool Selection" screen.
- [Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



### (3) Selecting a pool

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Welcome to the LD Binding Wizard" screen displays the "Pool Selection" screen.

Select Po -Pool List- Number P 0000h P	ool, assign Pool Name Pool0000	ns LD wi Type	.ll be bind,	from Po	ol list. Number of Pool	Ls : 3)
-Pool List- Number P	Pool Name	Type		( N	Number of Pool	ls : 3)
Number F	Pool Name	Type				
0000h F	Poo10000		RAID Type	Free (	Capacity[GB]	Pool
10.7		Basic	5		266.7	
0001h P	Poo10001	Basic	1		61.6	
00ffh F	Eng	Basic	1		*60.3	
Pool with	n '*' mark∶	has sev	eral free ar	eas.		
			< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel	Help

Figure 7-32 Selecting Pool Type

Pool List:	Allows selecting a pool you want to bind logical disks in it.
	An asterisk (*) in the "Free Capacity[GB]" field indicates that the pool has multiple
	unused areas. (An asterisk is displayed for a basic pool whose areas are fragmented due
	to logical disks removed.)
[Next] button:	Displays the "Free Area Selection" screen when you select a pool with multiple unused
	areas. When you select a pool without multiple unused areas or dynamic pool, the
	"Binding Method" screen is displayed.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Welcome to the LD Binding Wizard" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to guit the wizard, then the wizard closes
	if agreed.

### (4) Selecting unused areas

Selecting a pool with multiple unused areas and clicking the [Next] button on the "Pool Selection" screen displays the "Free Area Selection" screen.

LD Binding Wizard(3/8)				×
Free Area Selection Select one of free are	ea from list.		a de la	
Select one of	free area from list			
Pool Number	: 00ffh			
Pool Name	: Eng			
Pool Type	: Basic			
RAID Type	: 1			
Pool Capacit	v : 66.6 GB (71	.601.225.728	Bvtes)	
-Free Area I	.ist-	(Number of	free areas – 41	
		,		
Area	Free Capacity[GB]			
Area 0001	12.5			
Area 0002	0.1			
Area 0003	2.0			
Area 0004	45.7			
		_		
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel	Help

Figure 7-33 Selecting Unused Areas

Free Area List:	Allows selecting areas in which to bind logical disks.
[Next] button:	Displays the "Binding Method" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Pool Selection" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



### (5) Specifying the way of binding the logical disks

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Free Area Selection" screen displays the "Binding Method" screen. This screen is displayed when you select a pool without multiple unused areas or dynamic pool and click the [Next] button on the "Pool Selection" screen.

LD Binding Wizard(4/8)	×
Binding Method Select binding method from three types.	
Select binding method from three types.	
Only specify the number of LDs	
🔿 Only specify LD <u>c</u> apacity	
igcap Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity	
Description - Only specify the number of LDs	
LD capacity will become the value which is equal to Selected Free Area divided by the specified number. And the capacity is set in 1GB.	
- Only specify LD capacity	
Number of LDs will become the value which is equal to Selected Free Area divided by the specified number.	
- Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity	
Number of LDs and capacity will become the value equal to specified one.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel	Help

Figure 7-34 Specifying the Way of Binding the Logical Disks

Specify one of the following ways of binding the logical disks:

- Only specify the number of LDs (default)
   Specify the number of logical disks to bind in the pool.
- Only specify LD capacity

Specify the capacity of each of the logical disks to bind in the pool. You can specify a recommended capacity, set the capacity same with that of a logical disk already bound, or directly designate any value for the capacity.

Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity
 Specify any desired values for the number of logical disks and the capacity of one logical disk.
 To bind a control volume, check this option.

-----

[Next] button:	One of the following screens is displayed according to the specified way of binding the logical
	disks:
	Check-marking on [Only specify the number of LDs]:
	Displays the "Specify Number of LDs" screen.
	Check-marking on [Only specify LD capacity]:
	Displays the "Specify the Capacity" screen.
	• Check-marking on [Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity]:
	Displays the "Specify Number of LDs and LD Capacity" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Free Area Selection" screen. When you select a pool without multiple
	unused areas or dynamic pool, the "Pool Selection" screen is displayed again.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if
	agreed.

Although the capacity specified in the field is that of the region you can use, there are some region for controlling the disks of the pools in addition to the region usable by the user.



### (6)-1 Specifying the number of logical disks

Check-marking on [Only specify the number of LDs] on the "Binding Method" screen and clicking the [Next] button displays the "Specify Number of LDs" screen.

LD Binding Wizard(5/8)	×
Specify Number of LDs Set number of LDs only. LD capacity is calculated automatically.	1 . E .
Set number of LDs. Number of LDs (1-45)	
LD Capacity : 45.0 GB (48,318,382,080 Bytes)	
LD capacity will be calculated by specified number of LDs.	
Click Next to start LD binding.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help	

Figure 7-35 Specifying the Number of Logical Disks

Number of LDs:	Specify the number of logical disks to bind.
	Each logical disk is bound in the unit of 1 GB, and the maximum available capacity is
	automatically calculated.
[Next] button:	Displays the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Binding Method" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



#### (6)-2 Specifying the logical disk capacity

Check-marking on [Only specify LD capacity] on the "Binding Method" screen and clicking the [Next] button displays the "Specify the Capacity" screen.

LD Binding Wizard(5/8)
Specify the Capacity Set LD capacity only. Number of LDs will be calculated automatically.
Set LD capacity.
• Specify LD <u>c</u> apacity (1-45) LD Capacity : 2.0 GB (2,229,272,576 Bytes) Number of LDs : 22 Number of LDs is calculated by specified LD capacity.
Description - Specify recommend LD capacity Set recommend capacity from list. - Specify existing LD LD capacity will become same value of the specified existing LD. 'Reference' button displays existing LDs list. - Specify LD capacity Set capacity in 1GB.
Click Next to start LD binding.
< <u>D</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel Help

Figure 7-36 Specifying the Logical Disk Capacity

Use one of the following ways of specifying the capacity of the logical disks to bind:

• Specify recommend LD capacity

Specify one of the recommended values for the capacity of the logical disks to bind from the pull-down menu.

· Specify existing LD

Select a logical disk already bound to apply the capacity of the logical disk. You can select a logical disk in the "LD Specification" screen by clicking the [Reference] button.

• Specify LD capacity

Specify the capacity in units of 1 GB directly. The number of logical disks allowed to bind is automatically calculated according to the value of the capacity you specified.


ŧ Note that specifying a recommended capacity makes the capacity occupied by the pool larger than the capacity of the logical disks by 0.2 GB approximately and maximum. For details, refer to Appendix D "Notes on Use for Data Replication". З.

[Next] button: Displays the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen.

Displays back the "Binding Method" screen. [Back] button:

[Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



### (6)-3 Specifying the number of logical disks and the logical disk capacity

Check-marking on [Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity] on the "Binding Method" screen and clicking the [Next] button displays the "Specify Number of LDs and LD Capacity" screen.

LD Binding Wizard(5/8)
Specify Number of LDs and LD Capacity Set number of LDs and capacity.
Set number of LDs.
Number of LDs (1-45)
Set LD capacity.
• Specify recommend LD capacity $2.0$ $\checkmark$ GB
C Specify existing LD h Reference
C Specify LD capacity (1-45)
LD Capacity : 2.0 GB (2,229,272,576 Bytes)
Description
- Specify recommend LD capacity Set recommend capacity from list.
- Specify existing LD
LD capacity will become same value of the specified existing LD.
- Specify LD capacity
Set capacity in 1GB.
Click Next to start LD binding.
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help

Figure 7-37 Specifying the Number of Logical Disks and Logical Disk Capacity

Number of LDs:	Specify the number of logical disks according to (6)-1.
Set LD capacity:	Specify the capacity of the logical disks according to (6)-2.
[Next] button:	Displays the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Binding Method" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



About control volumes (1) A control volume is a volume for control over a disk array. To use SnapControl, it is required on the server where the LV is used. (2) Specify the capacity of a control volume following the steps described below: 1. Specify the recommended capacity, and display the pull down menu. 2. From the pull down menu, select the capacity of 0.2 GB (0.2 GB appears on the top of the pull down menu). LD Specification X Please specify the LD of the same capacity as the LD to bind. Detailed display Not Specify Reason Number Capacity[GB] RAID Type Ľ 001ah 2.0 6 <u>BBBBBB</u> 0023h 2.0 6 2.0 0024h 6 2.0 6 0025h 0026h 2.0 6 0027h 2.0 6 0333h 1.0 6 Cancel

Figure 7-38 Screen for Specifying Logical Disks and Their Capacity

By selecting a logical disk from the list, you can bind the logical disks setting their capacities same with it. For an unselectable logical disk, either of the following reasons is indicated in the Not Specify Reason column:

Excess of capacity: The capacity of the logical disk is exceeding the unused space of the pool.
Capacity unit disagreement: It is not possible to bind logical disks setting the same capacity with that of this logical disk.

For detailed reasons for mismatching capacity units and details on binding logical disks with a RAID configuration different from those in use, refer to Appendix D "Notes on Use for Data Replication".

[OK] button:Applies the parameter you specified on this screen, and displays back the screen on which<br/>you specified the capacity of the logical disks or the number of logical disks and their<br/>capacity.



[Cancel] button: Displays back the screen on which you specified the capacity of the logical disks or the number of logical disks and their capacity. All parameter changes you made on this screen are canceled.

# ⚠

E.

It is allowed to change the logical disk number selection displayed through this wizard or number displayed on the LD specification screen to the name of the logical disk. For details, refer to "Client Start/Stop" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with the OS in use. Note that selecting detailed view in the LD specification screen switches the positions of the numbers and the logical disk names.



### (7) Setting the detailed parameters for binding the logical disks

The "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen allows checking for and changing the format, name, and initial number of the logical disks, and the time to bind them.

LD Binding Wizard(6/8)
Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding Set detail parameter, LD number etc, for LD binding.
Confirm following detail parameter for LD binding. In case of parameter change, click 'Change' button.
Setting detail parameter for LD binding
OS Type : Without Specification
Name(Prefix) : 20000004C7F0809
Start Number : 03ffh
Format Time : 10 h
<u>C</u> hange
Description In case there are several LDs to build, LDs name and number are specified as follows. - The name makes a prefix the name currently displayed, and becomes what gave the LD number. (It becomes like xxx0000 and xxx0001.) - Unused numbers following the currently displayed LD Number are allocated.
< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> Cancel Help

Figure 7-39 Specifying Detailed Settings of the Logical Disks

[Change] button:	Allows you to make changes for the items displayed in the "Setting Detail Parameter for					
	LD Binding" screen. If you need to make changes, click this button to make changes on					
	the "Change" dialog box. Otherwise, click the [Next] button to proceed.					
[Next] button:	Displays the "Confirmation for LD Binding" screen.					
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Specify Number of LDs", "Specify the Capacity", or "Specify Number of LDs and LD Capacity" screen.					
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.					

Clicking the [Change] button on the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen displays the [Change] dialog:

hange 🛛 🛛 🗶
Change parameters for LD binding. If you check out, it will return to default value.
Change Parameter
▼ OS Typ <u>e</u> /LD Name
05 Type 🔤 Name 20000004C7F0809
▼ Starting LD Number (0006-03ff) 03ff → h
✓ Format Time (0-24) 10 → h
Description
In case there are several LDs to build, LDs name and number are specified as follows.
<ul> <li>The name makes a prefix the name currently displayed, and becomes what gave the LD number. (It becomes like xxx0000 and xxx0001.)</li> </ul>
- Unused numbers following the currently displayed LD Number are allocated.
The format time is the standard time required. However, the actual execution time varies with the load of the disk array. Binding will execute with fastest time selected by value '0'. Default value is '10'.
0K Cancel

Figure 7-40 Change Dialog Box

OS Type/LD Name: You can specify the format and name of the logical disks to bind. The logical disk name must be unique in the system. (Do not assign the same name twice or more.) Therefore, when you bind multiple sets of logical disks simultaneously, the logical disks are named with the character string specified and automatically numbered in order.

The initial value of the logical disk name field consists of 20 characters; 16 characters specific to the disk array and 4 characters of the logical disk number. When you do not make any change for logical disk name, the initial value is used in the form mentioned above:

Example: 20000004C518CAC0000, 20000004C518CAC0001, ...

Not changing the logical disk format displays a blank in the OS Type field.

Note that inputting a blank to the format sets the initial values for shipment; a blank in the OS Type field and 16 characters specific to the disk array + 4 characters of the logical disk number in the Name field.

Table 7-1 lists the selectable logical disk formats.



You can change the logical disk format and name later from the main window on the iSM client or according to 7.2.4 "Renaming a Logical Disk".

Format	Description
A4	Logical disk operated on the ACOS-4 system (If you are setting this format, ask our maintenance engineer.)
A2	Logical disk operated on the ACOS-2 system
AX	Logical disk operated on the AIX system
CX	Logical disk operated on the Solaris system
NX	Logical disk operated on the HP-UX system
LX	Logical disk operated on the Linux system
WN	Logical disk operated on the Windows system

\_\_\_\_

- (1) Any logical disk name that does not conform to the following rules is invalid:
  - Number of available characters: 1 to 24 characters
  - Available characters: Alphabet

E,

Alphabet	A to $Z$ (a to z)
	* Upper- and lower-case characters are distinguished.
Numerals:	0 to 9

.....

Underbar:

Slash:

/

.....

\* All the characters must be 1-byte characters.

(2) An invalid specification applies the logical disk name to be assigned by default.

(3) On the ACOS-4 system, use the logical disk id names same with those on the host.

.....

For details about the format A4, refer to Appendix G "ACOS-4 Resource Operation Guard".



i.

Starting L	D Number:	A number which is equa unused is assigned.	l to or higher than the specified logical disk number and still
		When this parameter is of subsequent to the largest	omitted (or if the specified number is invalid), the number t logical disk number already occupied is assigned.
		For example, when logic numbered as follows:	cal disk numbers 0, 1, 3, and 4 are in use, new logical disks are
		When omitted:	5, 6, 7
		When 0 specified:	2, 5, 6
		When 10 specified:	10, 11, 12
		Remark: Unlike	in the case of the screen of
		S100/S	1100/S1200/S1300/S2100/S2200/S2300, the screen allows
		changes	s for previous values.
Format Ti	me:	Specify the maximum du	uration of time to bind the logical disks (only for those to be
		bound in a basic pool).	
		You can specify 0 to 24	hours. Specifying 0 binds the logical disks in the shortest time.
		The time specified in the time.	e field is just a target, thus it is not assured to take the specified
The specif	fied time is th	he standard average, thus	the time actually required depends on the load on the disk array.
<b>Q</b>			
Specify 0 to bin	d the logical	disks in the shortest time	e. Otherwise, specify a larger value (24 or close to it) to
reduce load to the	he disk array	and give priority to the I	/O of other transactions.

[OK] button: Displays back the screen for specifying the details of the logical disks with the parameter(s) you changed.

.....

[Cancel] button: Displays back the screen for specifying the details of the logical disks. All parameter changes you made on this screen are canceled.

### IV-50

### (8) Checking for the parameters specified for the logical disks to bind

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen displays the "Confirmation for LD Binding" screen.

LD Binding	Wizard(7/8	)				×
<b>Confirm</b> LD	nation for LC binding param	) Bindir eter.	ng			
LD	binding p	arame	ter.			
:	Pool Numbe	r :	00ffh	L		
:	Pool Name	:	Eng			
:	Pool Type	:	Basic			
:	RAID Type	:	1			
:	LD Capacit	у:	1.0 G	æ (1,073,741,824 Byte	s)	
:	Format Tim	.e :	10 h			
	-LD List-			(	Number of LDs : 5	,
	Number	OS Ty	npe L	ogical Disk Name	Capacity[GB]	-
	1 0006h	WN	2	00000004C7F08090006	1.0	-
	70007h	WN	2	00000004C7F08090007	1.0	
	🖗 0008h	WN	2	00000004C7F08090008	1.0	
	🔐 000eh	WN	2	00000004C7F0809000E	1.0	
	🔐 03ffh	WN	2	00000004C7F080903FF	1.0	
Click	Next to co	ontinu	e. LD 1 abonat	binding will start.	, to quitable act	ting
screen	e or param , and char	iecer nge th	cnange e para	, click back to retur: meter.	n co suicable sec	cing
				< <u>B</u> ack <u>Next</u> >	Cancel	Help

Figure 7-41 Checking the Parameters Specified for the Logical Disks

- [Next] button: Displays a message asking you to proceed.
- [Back] button: Displays back the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen.
- [Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



Figure 7-42 Message Box to Start Binding Logical Disks

### IV-51

### (9) Finishing binding the logical disks

When the logical disks are successfully bound, the following screen is displayed:

LD Binding Wizard(8/8)	×
LD Binding Complete LD binding complete.	13
You have successfully completed the LD Binding wizard.	
To close this wizard, click Finish.	
< <u>B</u> ack <b>Finish</b> Cancel	Help

Figure 7-43 Successful Completion of Binding Logical Disks

[Finish] button:

Closes the wizard.



# 7.2.2 Expanding Capacity of Logical Disks

You can expand the logical disk capacity from the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

LD Individual Bind/Unbind Configuration list S2800/0037 Dynamic Pool O002h Basic Pool Spare	ogical Disk Physi Pool config Number OS Type	cal Disk	mation and sett Capacity[GB]	ing. (LDs) Snapshot Type	(Number of RPL Type	LDs : 60)
- Unused	000211         000           0003h         000	RPL_MV0002           RPL_MV0003           RPL_MV0004           RPL_MV0005           RPL_MV0006           RPL_MV0007           RPL_MV0009           RPL_MV0008           RPL_MV0000           RPL_MV0000           RPL_MV0000           RPL_MV0000           RPL_MV0000           RPL_MV0000           RPL_MV0000           RPL_MV0000	1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0 1.0		IA IA IA IA IA IA IA IA IA IA	
	Capacity <u>R</u> xpansi	on	Change <u>T</u> ime eneration Unb <u>i</u> n		Change N <u>a</u> me LD <u>U</u> nbino	1
inding Wizard Binding operations with wizar	d. <u>P</u> ool Bind	ling	LD Bindi Generation P	ng	<u>S</u> pare Bi L <u>V</u> Binn	nding
Get Disk Array Info		Close				Help

You can expand the capacity of logical disks which belong to a dynamic pool.

Figure 7-44 Expanding the Capacity of Logical Disks

#### <Steps for expanding the capacity of logical disks>

- 1. Select a dynamic pool in the configuration tree view.
- 2. Click the [Logical Disk] tab on the detailed information view.
- 3. Select a logical disk you want to remove from the list of logical disks in the detailed information view.
- 4. Click the [Capacity Expansion] button.

5. The "LD Capacity Expansion" dialog appears.

LD Capacity Expansion 🛛 🔀
Expand LD capacity.
LD Information
Number : 03clh
OS Type : WN
Name : 20000004C7F080903C1
Capacity : 2.0 GB (2,229,272,576 Bytes)
Expand Capacity
⊙ Specify recommend LD capacity     ☐
C Specify existing LD h Reference
C Specify LD capacity (3-223)
After Expanding Capacity : 4.1 GB (4,460,642,304 Bytes)
Description
- Specify recommend LD capacity
Select recommend capacity from list.
- Specify existing LD
LD capacity will become the value same as the specified existing LD's. 'Reference' button displays existing LDs list.
- Specify LD capacity
Set capacity in 168.
OK Cancel

Figure 7-45 LD Capacity Expansion Dialog

For details on how to expand the logical disk capacity, refer to 7.2.1 (6)-2 "Specifying the logical disk capacity".

[OK] button: Displays the dialog box for checking the parameters of the logical disks expanded.



Confirm Expand LD Capacity 🛛 🗙
LD capacity will be expanded with following parameters.
Number : 03clh
OS Type : WN
Name : 200000004C7F080903C1
Before Expanding Capacity : 2.0 GB (2,229,272,576 Bytes)
After Expanding Capacity : 4.1 GB (4,460,642,304 Bytes)
Is it ok to start expand LD capacity?
<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o

Figure 7-46 Dialog Box for Checking the Parameters of the Logical Disks Expanded

[Yes] button: Starts expanding the capacity of the logical disks.

[No] button: Returns to the "LD Capacity Expansion" dialog.

6. When the capacity is successfully changed, the following message is displayed:







## 7.2.3 Unbinding Logical Disks

You can unbind logical disks from the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

S2800/0037	Logical Di	.sk   Physi	cal Disk				
0000h	P.	ol config	guration infor	mation and sett	ing. (LDs) (1	Number of LD:	s : 60)
0001h	Number	OS Type	LD Name	Capacity[GB]	Snapshot Type R	PL Type	<b>_</b>
Spare Unused	💕 0002h	WN	RPL_MV0002	1.0	I	V	
	🔐 0003h	WN	RPL_MV0003	1.0	I	v	
	🗗 0004h	WN	RPL_MV0004	1.0	I	v	
	🗗 0005h	WN	RPL_MV0005	1.0	I	v	
	🕑 0006h	WN	RPL_MV0006	1.0	I	v	
	🗗 0007h	WN	RPL_MV0007	1.0	I	v	
	🗗 0009h	WN	RPL_MV0009	1.0	I	v	
	📅 000ah	WN	RPL_MV000A	1.0	I	v	
	🗗 000ьн	WN	RPL_MV000B	1.0	I	v	
	000ch	WN	RPL_MV000C	1.0	I	v	
	000 dh	WN	RPL_MV000D	1.0	I	v	
	000eh	WN	RPL_MV000E	1.0	I	v	
	000fh	WN	RPL_MV000F	1.0	I	v	
	0010h	WN	RPL_MV0010	1.0	I	v	<b>_</b>
	194 001 11.	T.TTT	BBI MICOLI	1.0	т	**	
	Capacity	y <u>E</u> xpansi	on	Change <u>T</u> ime	. Ch	ange N <u>a</u> me	
			G	eneration Unb <u>i</u> n	d	LD <u>U</u> nbind	
nding Wizard inding operations with wi	.zard.	Pool Bin	ding	<u>L</u> D Bindi	ng	<u>S</u> pare Bindi	.ng

Figure 7-48 Unbinding Logical Disks

#### <Steps for unbinding logical disks>

- 1. Select a basic pool or dynamic pool in the configuration tree view.
- 2. Click the [Logical Disk] tab on the detailed information view.
- 3. Select a logical disk you want to remove from the list of logical disks in the detailed information view.
- 4. Click the [LD Unbind] button.



5. A message box asking you to unbind the logical disk is displayed.



Figure 7-49 Message Box for Confirmation of Unbinding a Logical Disk

⚠
If the logical disks in the pool are in the following states, it is impossible to unbind them.
1. Managed by the Access Control (PORT mode).
2. Managed by the Access Control (WWN mode).
3. Pairing is performed.
4. Link setting is performed (snapshot).
5. Assigned to a cache segment (cache segment setting).
6. A reserve group is set (LD Administrator).
Execute the unbinding after removing these conditions.

6. When the logical disk is successfully unbound, the following message is displayed.



Figure 7-50 Message for Successful Completion of Unbinding Logical Disks

## 7.2.4 Renaming a Logical Disk

You can rename a logical disk from the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

S2800/0037	Logical	Disk ph	ysical Disk			
0000h 0002h Basic Pool		Pool con	figuration info	mation and setti	ng. (LDs) (Number o	f LDs : 60)
Spore	Number	OS Typ	e LD Name	Capacity[GB] S	Snapshot Type RPL Type	<b>▲</b>
Unused	<b>10002</b>	h WN	RPL_MV0002	1.0	IV	1
<u> </u>	0003	h WN	RPL_MV0003	1.0	IV	
	0004	h WN	RPL_MV0004	1.0	IV	
	0005	h WN	RPL_MV0005	1.0	IV	
	0006	h WN	RPL_MV0006	1.0	IV	
	D 0007	h WN	RPL_MV0007	1.0	10	
	10009	n wn L ww	RPL_MV0009	1.0	IV	
	1000a	1 WIN	DDI MUOOOR	1.0	10	
	1000 C	h UNI	PPL MUDDOC	1.0	TV	
	5000 K	h IIN	RPL MWOODD	1.0	TV	
	1 000e	h WN	RPL MV000K	1.0	IV	
	1000 f	h WN	RPL MV000F	1.0	IV	
	10010	h WN	RPL MV0010	1.0	IV	_
	1		DDT 100011	1.0	TTT	<b>_</b>
	Capac	ity <u>R</u> xpa	nsion	Change <u>T</u> ime	Change N <u>a</u> m	.e
			G	eneration Unb <u>i</u> nd	LD Unbin	nd
nding Wizard inding operations with	wizard.	Pool F	Sinding	ID Bindin	r Snare E	anding
	_	1001 1				
		SD& R	inding	Generation Ad	ding LV Bi	ndina

Figure 7-51 Renaming a Logical Disk

#### <Steps for renaming a logical disk>

- 1. Select a basic pool or dynamic pool in the configuration tree view.
- 2. Click the [Logical Disk] tab on the detailed information view.
- 3. Select a logical disk you want to remove from the list of logical disks in the detailed information view.
- 4. Click the [Change Name] button.



5. The dialog for renaming a logical disk appears.

Setting O	S Type/L	D Na	me 🔀
Numbe	r	:	009fh
OS Ty	pe	:	ωN
Name		:	Rpl_Client_009F
New O	S <u>T</u> ype	:	WN 💌
New <u>N</u>	ame	:	
	OK	:	Cancel



4	7		
(1)	The logical disk name must be uniq	ue in the system	m. (Do not assign the same name twice or more.)
(2)	The initial value of the logical disk	name field con	sists of 20 characters; 16 characters specific to the disk array
	and 4 characters of the logical disk	number.	
(3)	Any logical disk name that does not	t conform to the	e following rules is invalid:
	• Number of available characters:	1 to 24 chara	cters
	• Available characters:	Alphabet:	A to Z (a to z)
			* Upper- and lower-case characters are distinguished.
		Numerals:	0 to 9
		Underbar:	_
		Slash:	/
	* All the characters must be 1-byte	characters.	

6. When the logical disk is successfully renamed, the following message is displayed.

iSM	×
٩	[25401] LD name setting complete successfully.
	OK

Figure 7-53 Message for Successful Completion of Renaming the Logical Disk

# 7.2.5 Changing Time to Bind Logical Disks

You can change the duration of time to bind logical disks from the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

52800/0037	Logical D:	isk physi	cal Disk				
Dynamic Pool	<b>P</b> ,	ool config	guration informat	ion and setting.	(LDs)	(Number of LD	s : 203)
Spare	Number	OS Type	LD Name	Capacity	[GB] Snap	shot Type RP:	L Typ ▲
J Unused	100 014dh		200000004C7F080	9014D	0.2	IV	
	🕑 014eh		200000004C7F080	9014E	0.2	IV	
	🕑 014fh		200000004C7F080	9014F	0.2	IV	
	🚏 0150h		200000004C7F080	90150	0.2	IV	
	🖞 0151h		200000004C7F080	90151	0.2	IV	
	🗗 0152h		200000004C7F080	90152	0.2	IV	
	🗗 0153h		200000004C7F080	90153	0.2	IV	
	0154h		200000004C7F080	90154	0.2	IV	
	0155h		200000004C7F080	90155	0.2	IV	
	0156h		200000004C7F080	90156	0.2	IV	
	0157h		20000004078080	90157	0.2	10	
	D 0158h		200000004078080	90128	0.2	TA TA	
	1015oh		200000004077000	90153	0.2		<b>_</b>
					1		
	Capacit	y <u>E</u> xpansi	on Ci	hange <u>T</u> ime		Change N <u>a</u> me	
			Gene	ration Unb <u>i</u> nd		LD <u>U</u> nbind	
ing Wizard ding operations with wizs	ard.	Pool Bin	ding	<u>L</u> D Binding	. 1	<u>S</u> pare Bind	ling
		SRA Bind	ing	Generation Addin	g	LV Bindi	ng

You can change the time to bind logical disks which belong to a basic pool.

Figure 7-54 Changing the Time to Bind Logical Disks

#### <Steps for changing the time to bind logical disks>

- 1. Select a basic pool in the configuration tree view.
- 2. Click the [Logical Disk] tab on the detailed information view.
- 3. Select a logical disk you want to remove from the list of logical disks in the detailed information view.
- 4. Click the [Change Time] button.

5. The "Change Pool Rebuild/Expansion Time" dialog box appears.

Change LD Format Time	×
LD Format Time can be changed.	
Format Time	
<u>F</u> ormat Time (0-24) 10 - h	
(0:Operates by the fastest)	
0K Cancel	

Figure 7-55 Dialog Box for Changing the Time to Build Logical Disks

Specify the duration of time to bind the logical disks. You can specify 0 to 24 hours. Although specifying 0 binds the logical disks in the shortest time, select an appropriate time taking account of the load to the host I/O. The time specified in the field is just a target, thus it is not assured to take the specified time.

6. When the time is successfully changed, the following message is displayed:



Figure 7-56 Message for Successful Completion of Changing the Time



### 7.2.6 Logical Disk Batch Setting

Specify the same RAID type and logical disk capacity for the unused physical disks on the disk array. The selectable logical disk configuration is as follows:

• RAID6 (8+PQ) The required number of physical disks is 10 or more, and the available capacity of the pool is approximately 80% of the capacity of all the physical disks.

Batch binding logical disks is to make up logical disks collectively and easily by specifying some parameters about the RAID type, the number of logical disks, and other related items. This section describes the steps for batch binding logical disks and some notes on doing that.

S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array provides a wizard for binding logical disks collectively.

The batch binding wizard allows going through all the steps on unused physical disks from binding a pool to binding the logical disks. The available capacity of the pool is the same with that of the logical disks. The pool is bound with a configuration of RAID6 (8+PQ). Set other parameters for binding logical disks according to 7.2 "Method of Binding Logical Disks".



### (1) Starting up the LD Batch Binding Wizard

To start up the LD Batch Binding Wizard, click the [LD Bind] button in the "Configuration- [Setting Mode]" menu.



Figure 7-57 Starting up the LD Batch Binding Wizard

- [Next] button: Displays the "Number of Pools and Spares" screen.
- [Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



### (2) Specifying the number of pools and the number of spares

Clicking the [Next] button on the initial screen of the LD Batch Binding Wizard displays the "Number of Pools and Spares" screen.

Number of Pools and Spares	
Set number of Pools and Spares.	
Set number of Pools, number of PDs in the Pool, and number of Spares.	
Number of <u>P</u> ools (1-1) $10\frac{1}{10}$ Number of PDs (10-10) $10\frac{10}{10}$	
Set number of Spares.	
Number of Spares (0-0) $0 - \frac{1}{2}$	
Number of Unused PDs : O	
Description Set number of Pools, number of PDs in the Pool, and number of	
Spares. Number of unused PDs will be calculate by these parameter.	
Pool type is dynamic Pool(RAID6(8+PQ)). Set number of PDs to more than ten.	
'-' mark with number of unused PDs means shortage resource for binding. Set other value for binding.	
( Death Navks Concel   Hala	

Figure 7-58 Specifying the Number of Pools and Spares

Number of Pools:	Specify the number of pools you want to bind.
	The pools you are going to bind need to be a dynamic pool which consists of 10 physical
	disks. Their configuration is set to RAID6 (8+PQ).
Number of PDs:	Specify the number of physical disks used to bind the pool(s).
Number of Spares:	Specify the number of spares you want to use.
[Next] button:	Displays the "Confirmation for Pool Binding Parameter" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Welcome to the LD Batch Binding Wizard" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



### (3) Checking for the parameters specified for the pool(s)

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Number of Pools and Spares" screen displays the "Confirmation for Pool Binding Parameter" screen.

Pool Type	:	Dynamic
RAID Type	:	6(8+PQ)
Pool Capacity	:	530.0 GB (569,083,166,720 Bytes)
Number of Pools	:	1
Total Pool	:	530.0 GB (569,083,166,720 Bytes)
Number of Spares	:	0
Number of Unused	:	0
lick Next to continu hese parameter. Next inding will start af	ue. N : is fter	Number of unused PDs will be calculate by setting for LD binding. Pool, Spare and LD confirmation for LD binding parameter.

Figure 7-59 Checking for the Parameters Specified for the Pool(s)

(A) Parameters for the pool(s)

Pool Type:	Type of the pool(s)
RAID Type:	RAID type of the pool(s)
Pool Capacity:	Capacity per pool
Number of Pools:	Number of pools to bind
Total Pool:	Total capacity of the pool(s) to bind

Number of Spares:	Number of spares to bind (in total)
Number of Unused	<ul> <li>Number of disks unused to bind the pool(s).</li> <li>When you use the batch bind wizard, some physical disks remain unused depending on the parameters specified in Number of Pools, Number of PDs, and Number of Spares.</li> </ul>
[Next] button:	Displays the "Binding Method" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Number of Pools and Spares" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.

### (B) Parameters for the physical disks



### (4) Specifying the way of binding the logical disks

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Confirmation for Pool Binding Parameter" screen displays the "Binding Method" screen.

LD Batch Binding Wizard(4/8)	×
Binding Method Select binding method from three types.	
Select binding method from three types.	
Only specify the number of LDs	
C Only specify LD <u>c</u> apacity	
igcap Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity	
Description	
- Only specify the number of LDs	
LD capacity will become the value which is equal to Pool Capacity divided by the specified number. And the capacity is set in 1GB.	
- Only specify LD capacity	
Number of LDs will become the value which is equal to Pool Capacity divided by the specified number.	
- Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity	
Number of LDs and capacity will become the value equal to specified one.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext> Cancel	Help

Figure 7-60 Specifying the Way of Binding Logical Disks

Specify one of the following ways of binding the logical disks:

- Only specify the number of LDs
   Specify the number of logical disks to bind per pool.
- Only specify LD capacity

Specify the capacity of each of the logical disks to bind per pool. You can specify a recommended capacity, set the capacity same with that of a logical disk already bound, or directly designate any value for the capacity.

• Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity Specify any desired values for the number of logical disks and the capacity of one logical disk.



l

[Next] button:	One of the following screens is displayed according to the specified way of binding the
	logical disks:
	• Check-marking on [Only specify the number of LDs]:
	Displays the "Specify Number of LDs" screen.
	Check-marking on [Only specify LD capacity]:
	Displays the "Specify the Capacity" screen.
	Check-marking on [Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity]:
	Displays the "Specify Number of LDs and LD Capacity" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Confirmation for Pool Binding Parameter" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.
<u> </u>	
though the capacity spo	ecified in the field is that of the region you can use, there are some region for controlling
e disks of the pools in a	ddition to the region usable by the user.



### (5)-1 Specifying the number of logical disks

Check-marking on [Only specify the number of LDs] on the "Binding Method" screen and clicking the [Next] button displays the "Specify Number of LDs" screen.

LD Batch Binding Wizard(5/8)
Specify Number of LDs Set number of LDs only. LD capacity is calculated automatically.
Specify the number of LDs bind to one Pool. Number of LDs (1-528)
LD Capacity : 529.0 GB (568,009,424,896 Bytes)
LD capacity will be calculated by specified number of LDs.
Click Next to start LD binding.
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help

Figure 7-61 Specifying the Number of Logical Disks

Number of LDs: Specify the number of logical disks to bind.						
	The capacity of each logical disk is set in the unit of 1 GB, and the maximum available					
	capacity for the logical disks is automatically calculated. In addition to that, there is the					
	number of logical disks to bind in one pool, thus the number of logical disks actually					
	bound is the specified number multiplied by the number of pools.					
[Next] button:	Displays the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen.					
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Binding Method" screen.					
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes					
	if agreed.					



### (5)-2 Specifying the logical disk capacity

Check-marking on [Only specify LD capacity] on the "Binding Method" screen and clicking the [Next] button displays the "Specify the Capacity" screen.

D Batch Binding Wizard(5/8)
Specify the Capacity Set LD capacity only. Number of LDs will be calculated automatically.
Set LD capacity. © Specify recommend LD capacity 2.0 © Specify existing LD h Reference
C Specify LD capacity (1-529) 529 GB
LD Capacity : 2.0 GB (2,229,272,576 Bytes)
Number of LDs : 235
Number of LDs is calculated by specified LD capacity.
Description - Specify recommend LD capacity Set recommend capacity from list.
<ul> <li>Specify existing LD</li> <li>LD capacity will become same value of the specified existing LD.</li> <li>'Reference' button displays existing LDs list.</li> <li>Specify LD capacity</li> <li>Set capacity in 1GB.</li> </ul>
Click Next to start LD binding.
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel Help

Figure 7-62 Specifying the Logical Disk Capacity

Use one of the following ways of specifying the capacity of the logical disks to bind:

- Specify recommend LD capacity Specify one of the recommended values for the capacity of the logical disks to bind from the pull-down menu.
- Specify existing LD

Select a logical disk already bound to apply the capacity of the logical disk. You can select a logical disk in the "LD Specification" screen by clicking the [Reference] button. (Refer to Figure 7-64 "Screen for Specifying a Logical Disk".)

• Specify LD capacity

Specify the capacity in units of 1 GB directly. The number of logical disks allowed to bind is automatically calculated according to the value of the capacity you specified.

### IV-70

..... Ţ Note that specifying a recommended capacity makes the capacity occupied by the pool larger than the capacity of the logical disks by 0.2 GB approximately and maximum. For details, refer to Appendix D "Notes on Use for Data Replication". į., 

[Next] button:	Displays the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Binding Method" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



### (5)-3 Specifying the number of logical disks and the logical disk capacity

Check-marking on [Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity] on the "Binding Method" screen and clicking the [Next] button displays the "Specify Number of LDs and LD Capacity" screen.

LD Batch Binding Wizard(5/8)
Specify Number of LDs and LD Capacity Set number of LDs and capacity.
Specify the number of LDs bind to one Pool.
Number of LDs (1-528)
Set LD capacity.
Specify recommend LD capacity 2.0 GB
C Specify existing LD h Reference
○ Specify LD capacity (1-529) 529 GB
LD Capacity : 2.0 GB (2,229,272,576 Bytes)
Description
- Specify recommend LD capacity Set recommend capacity from list.
- Specify existing LD
LD capacity will become same value of the specified existing LD.
'Reference' button displays existing LDs list.
Set capacity in 1GB.
Click Next to start LD binding.
Conset Liste
< <u>Back</u> <u>N</u> ext> Cancel Help

Figure 7-63 Specifying the Number of Logical Disks and Logical Disk Capacity

Specify the number of logical disks according to (5)-1.

Specify the capacity of the logical disks according to (5)-2.

- [Next] button: Displays the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen.
- [Back] button: Displays back the "Binding Method" screen.
- [Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.

Selecting a logical disk and clicking the [Reference] button displays the following screen:

### IV-72

LC	) Specifi	cation					×
	Please	specify the L ailed display	D of the	same capacity	as the LD t	o bind.	
	Not S	pecify Reason	Number	Capacity[GB]	RAID Type		
	7		0011h	1.0	1		
				OK	Can	icel	

Figure 7-64 Screen for Specifying a Logical Disk

By selecting a logical disk from the list, you can bind the logical disks setting their capacities same with it. For an unselectable logical disk, either of the following reasons is indicated in the "Not Specify Reason" column:

Excess of capacity:

The capacity of the logical disk is exceeding the unused space of the pool.

• Capacity unit disagreement:

It is not possible to bind logical disks setting the same capacity with that of this logical disk. For detailed reasons for mismatching capacity units and details on binding logical disks with a RAID configuration different from those in use, refer to Appendix D "Notes on Use for Data Replication".

- [OK] button: Applies the parameter you specified on this screen, and displays back the screen on which you specified the capacity of the logical disks or the number of logical disks and their capacity.
- [Cancel] button: Displays back the screen on which you specified the capacity of the logical disks or the number of logical disks and their capacity. All parameters you specified on this screen are canceled.



It is allowed to change the logical disk number selection displayed through this wizard or number displayed on the LD specification screen to the name of the logical disk. For details, refer to "Client Start/Stop" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with the OS in use. Note that selecting detailed view in the LD specification screen switches the positions of the numbers and the logical disk names.



### (6) Specifying the detailed settings of the logical disks

The "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen allows checking for the format, name, and initial number of the logical disks, and the time to bind them.

atch Binding Wizard(6/8)
Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding Set detail parameter, LD number etc, for LD binding.
Confirm following detail parameter for LD binding. In case of parameter change, click 'Change' button.
Setting detail parameter for LD binding
OS Type : Without Specification
Name(Prefix) : 20000004C7F0809
Start Number : 000fh
<u>C</u> hange
<ul> <li>Description</li> <li>In case there are several LDs to build, LDs name and number are specified as follows.</li> <li>The name makes a prefix the name currently displayed, and becomes what gave the LD number.</li> <li>(It becomes like xxx0000 and xxx0001.)</li> <li>Unused numbers following the currently displayed LD Number are allocated.</li> </ul>
< <u>B</u> ack Cancel Help

Figure 7-65 Specifying the Detailed Settings of the Logical Disks

OS Type/Name: You can specify the format and name of the logical disks to bind. The logical disk name must be unique in the system. (Do not assign the same name twice or more.) Therefore, when you bind multiple sets of logical disks simultaneously, the logical disks are named with the character string specified and automatically numbered in order.

The initial value of the logical disk name field consists of 20 characters; 16 characters specific to the disk array and 4 characters of the logical disk number. When you do not make any change for logical disk name, the initial value is used in the form mentioned above:

Example: 20000004C518CAC0000, 20000004C518CAC0001, ...

Not changing the logical disk format displays a blank in the OS Type field.

Note that inputting a blank to the format sets the initial values for shipment; a blank in the OS Type field and 16 characters specific to the disk array + 4 characters of the logical

### IV-75

disk number in the Name field.

Table 7-2 lists the selectable logical disk formats.

You can change the logical disk format and name later from the main window on the iSM client or according to 7.2.4 "Renaming a Logical Disk".

	Table 7-2List of Formats			
Format	Description			
A2	Logical disk operated on the ACOS-2 system			
A4	Logical disk operated on the ACOS-4 system (If you are setting this format, ask our maintenance engineer.)			
AX	Logical disk operated on the AIX system			
CX	Logical disk operated on the Solaris system			
LX	Logical disk operated on the Linux system			
NX	Logical disk operated on the HP-UX system			
WN	Logical disk operated on the Windows system			

Number of sucilable shore store			
<ul> <li>Number of available characters:</li> <li>Available characters:</li> </ul>	1 to 24 char	1 to 24 characters Alphabet: $A = T (a = b = 7)$	
Available characters.	Alphaoet.	* Upper- and lower-case characters are distinguished	
	Numerals:	0 to 9	
	Underbar:		
	Slash:	/	
* All the characters must be 1-byt	e characters.		
2) An invalid specification applies the	e logical disk n	name to be assigned by default.	
(3) On the ACOS-4 system, use the lo	gical disk id na	ames same with those on the host.	
A			
	Annondiv C "	ACOS-A Resource Operation Guard"	

When this parameter is omitted (or if the specified number is invalid), the number subsequent to the largest logical disk number already occupied is assigned.

### IV-76

For example, when logical disk numbers 0, 1, 3, and 4 are in use, new logical disks are numbered as follows:

	When omitted:	5,6,7			
	When 0 specified:	2,5,6			
	When 10 specified:	10,11,12			
[Change] button:	Displays the screen which Parameter Screen".)	allows changing parameters.	(Refer to Figure 7-66 "Change		
[Next] button:	Displays a message asking	g you to proceed.			
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Specify Number of LDs", "Specify the Capacity", or "Specify Number of LDs and LD Capacity" screen				
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to if agreed.	ask whether you want to quit	the wizard, then the wizard closes		

Clicking the [Change] button on the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen displays the following screen:



nge	×
Change parameters for LD binding. If you check out, it will return to default value.	
Change Parameter	
▼ OS Typ <u>e</u> /LD Name	
05 Type 🚾 💌 Name 20000004C7F0809	
✓ Starting LD Number (000f-03fc) 000f → h	
Description In case there are several LDs to build, LDs name and number are specified as follows.	
<ul> <li>The name makes a prefix the name currently displayed, and becomes what gave the LD number. (It becomes like xxx0000 and xxx0001.)</li> </ul>	re
- Unused numbers following the currently displayed LD Number are allocated.	
0K Cancel	

Figure 7-66 Change Parameter Screen

[OK] button:	Displays back the screen for specifying the details of the logical disks with the			
	parameter(s) you changed.			
[Cancel] button:	Displays back the screen for specifying the details of the logical disks.	All parameter		
	changes you made on this screen are canceled.			
### (7) Checking for the parameters for batch binding the logical disks

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen displays the "Confirmation for LD Batch Binding Parameter" screen. Check for the parameters specified for batch binding the logical disks, then click the [Next] button to start binding the pool(s) and the logical disks.

Pool Tyme	- Dynamic
RAID Type	: 6(8+P0)
Pool Capacity	: 530.0 GB (569,083,166,720 Bytes)
Number of Pools	: 1
Total Pool Capacity	: 530.0 GB (569,083,166,720 Bytes)
Total Unused Pool Capacity	: 527.7 GB (566,667,247,616 B <del>y</del> tes)
LD Capacity	: 1.0 GB (1,073,741,824 Bytes)
Number of LDs	: 2
Total LD Capacity	: 2.0 GB (2,147,483,648 Bytes)
OS Type	: Without Specification
LD Name(Prefix)	: 20000004C7F0809
LD Start Number	: 000fh
Number of Spares	: 0
Number of Hunsed	. 0

Figure 7-67 Checking for the Parameters of Batch Binding the Logical Disks

(A) Parameters for the pool(s)

Pool Type:	Type of the pool(s)
RAID Type:	RAID type of the pool(s)
Pool Capacity:	Capacity per pool
Number of Pools:	Number of pools to bind

Total Pool Capacity: Total capacity of the pool(s) to bind

Total Unused Pool Capacity: Capacity which is not used for binding the logical disks in the pool to bind

## IV-79

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

LD Capacity:	Capacity of each of the logical disks to bind
Number of LDs:	Number of logical disks to bind Number of all logical disks to bind
Total LD Capacity:	Total amount of all logical disks to bind "LD Capacity" × "Number of LDs" = "Total LD Capacity"
OS Type:	Format of the logical disks to bind
LD Name(Prefix):	Name of the logical disks to bind
LD Start Number:	Initial number of the logical disks to bind

#### (B) Parameters for the logical disks

(C) Parameters for the physical disks

Number of Spares:	Number of spares to bind (in total)
Number of Unused:	Number of disks unused to bind the pool(s) When you use the batch bind wizard, some physical disks remain unused depending on the parameters specified in "Number of Pools", "Number of PDs", and "Number of Spares".
[Next] button:	Displays a message asking you to proceed.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Setting Detail Parameter for LD Binding" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard

closes if agreed.



Figure 7-68 Message for Asking To Proceed





### (8) Finishing batch binding the logical disks

On successful completion, the following screen is displayed:

LD Batch Binding Wizard(8/8)	×
LD Batch Binding Complete LD batch binding complete.	All
You have successfully completed the LD Batch Binding wizard.	
To close this wizard, click Finish.	
< <u>B</u> ack. [Finish] Cancel Hel	p

Figure 7-69 Successful Completion of LD Batch Binding

Note that successful completion in this section means that the sequence to bind the logical disks started successfully. Thus, you need to check that the logical disks are correctly set up from the main window of the iSM client.

[Finish] button: Closes the wizard.



On unsuccessful completion, the following screen is displayed:

LD Batch Binding Wizard(8/8)	×
LD Batch Binding Complete LD batch binding complete.	A.S.
Failed to LD batch binding.	
To close this wizard, click Finish.	
< <u>B</u> ack <b>Finish</b> Cancel	Help

Figure 7-70 Screen On Unsuccessful Completion

Possible causes of an LD batch binding failure may be a communication error between the iSM server and the iSM client, a problem in the disk array, and so forth. If a communication error is the cause of unsuccessful completion, the instruction to do batch binding the logical disks has been correctly issued, thus re-connect the iSM client and check for the communication between them. If there may be an error in the disk array, check the operation records in which the iSM server is logging errors. Then, take an appropriate measure for the error according to the iSM server log, then try to redo batch binding the logical disks.



# 7.3 Binding a Spare

# 7.3.1 Binding a Spare

Bind spare disks on the disk array through wizard. You can bind spare disks following the steps on the wizard.

....

### (1) Starting up the spare binding wizard

Click the [Spare Binding] button in the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

LD Individual Bind/Unbind		P
-Configuration list		
S2800/0037	Unused	
Basic Pool		
Spare	Disk configuration information (unused DDs) (Number of	DDs · 7)
Unused	Pisk configuración información (anased PS). (Mambel of	
	Number Capacity[GB]	
	00h-06h 66.6	
	00h-07h 66.6	
	00h-08h 66.6	
	00h-09h 66.6	
	$\square 00h-0hh$ $66.6$	
	200b-0ch 66.6	
Binding Wizard		
Binding operations with wi	ard. <u>P</u> ool Binding <u>L</u> D Binding <u>Spare Bin</u>	nding
	SEA Binding Generation Adding LV Bind	ling
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo	Close	Help

Figure 7-71 Starting Up the Spare Binding Wizard

### (2) Setting about the spare binding wizard

Clicking the [Spare Binding] button on the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen displays the "Welcome to the Spare Binding Wizard" screen.



Figure 7-72 Setting about the Spare Binding Wizard

- [Next] button: Displays the "PD Selection" screen.
- [Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.

### (3) Selecting physical disks

Clicking the [Next] button on the "Welcome to the Spare Binding Wizard" screen displays the "PD Selection" screen.

Spare Binding Wiza	ord(2/4)				×
PD Selection Select PD for	Spare binding.				
Select s	come unused PDs fr	om list for	Spare bindi	ng.	
-Unused PDs-	(Number of PDs :	5)	-Spares-	(Number of Spa	res : 1)
Number	Capacity[GB]		Number	Capacity[G	B]
🖗 00h-06h	66.6	$\rightarrow$	🖗 00h-04h	66	.6
🔐 00h-0bh	66.6	kdd			
00h-0ch	66.6	- Marca			
🔐 00h-0dh	66.6				
🔐 00h-0eh	66.6				
		Delete			
1			1		
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext> [	Cancel	Help

Figure 7-73 Selecting Physical Disks

Unused PDs:	Allows selecting unused physical disk(s) to be used as spare disks.
Spares:	Lists spare disks to be bound on the disk array.
[Add] button:	Select unused physical disk(s) to be used as spare disks, then click this button to add them as spares.
[Delete] button:	Select any physical disks you do not want to use as spares, then click this button. The selected physical disks are restored to the list of unused physical disks.
[Next] button:	Displays the "Confirmation for Spare Binding Parameter" screen.
[Back] button:	Displays back the "Welcome to the Spare Binding Wizard" screen.
[Cancel] button:	Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.

## IV-86

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

### (4) Checking for the parameters specified for the spare

Clicking the [Next] button on the "PD Selection" screen displays the "Confirmation for Spare Binding Parameter" screen.

Spare Bindin	g Wizard(3/4)				×
<b>Confirma</b> Spare	tion for Spare Bi binding parameter.	nding Parameter			
Spa	re will be bo	und with follo	wing parameters.		
	-Spares-		(Number	of Spares : 1)	
	Number	Capacity[GB]			
	00h-04h	66.6			
Click Next to start Spare binding. Spare binding will start.					
		< <u>B</u> a	ck <u>N</u> ext>	Cancel	Help

Figure 7-74 Checking for the Parameters Specified for a Spare

Spares:	List of physical	disks assigned as spares.
•		<b>Ç</b>

Number of Spares: Indicates the number of physical disks assigned as spares.

- [Next] button: Displays a message asking you to proceed.
- [Back] button: Displays back the "PD Selection" screen.
- [Cancel] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.



Figure 7-75 Message Box to Start Binding the Spare

### (5) Finishing binding the spare

When the spare is successfully bound, the following screen is displayed:

Spare Binding Wizard(4/4)	×
Spare Binding Complete Spare binding complete.	A
You have successfully completed the Spare Binding wizard.	
To close this wizard, click Finish.	
< <u>B</u> ack <b>Finish</b> Cancel <b>H</b>	elp

Figure 7-76 Spare Successfully Bound

[Finish] button: Displays a confirmation to ask whether you want to quit the wizard, then the wizard closes if agreed.

. .

# 7.3.2 Unbinding a Spare

You can unbind spares out of the disk array from the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen.

🚰 LD Individual Bind/Unbind			×
Configuration list			
S2800/0021 Dynamic Pool 0000h Basic Pool Spare Unused	Disk configuration info ar Capacity[CE] n-Ofh 133.1	rmation (Spares).	(Number of PDs : 1)
			Spare Unbind
Binding Wizard			
Binding operations with wizard.	<u>P</u> ool Binding	LD Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding
	S <u>R</u> A Binding	Generation Adding	L <u>Y</u> Binding
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo	Close	4	Help

Figure 7-77 Unbinding a Spare

#### <Steps for unbinding a spare>

- 1. Select Spare in the configuration tree view.
- 2. Select a spare you want to unbind out of the array from the list of spares in the detailed information view.
- 3. Click the [Spare Unbind] button.



4. A message box asking you to unbind the spare is displayed.



Figure 7-78 Message Box for Unbinding Spare

5. When the spare is successfully unbound, the following message is displayed.



Figure 7-79 Message for Successful Completion of Unbinding the Spare



# 7.4 Explanation of Configuration Setting Screen

# 7.4.1 Logical Disk Binding List Screen

Clicking the [LD Bind/Unbind] button on "Configuration - [Setting Mode]" displays the following screen. This section provides the description of the items displayed on this screen according to the alphabets encircled on the figure shown below. For details about operations, refer to the following sections:

- To handle a pool: Refer to 7.1 "Pool Binding".
- To handle logical disks: Refer to 7.2 "Method of Binding Logical Disks".
- To handle a spare: Refer to 7.3 "Binding a Spare".
- To handle a snapshot: Refer to the "Snapshot User's Manual (Function Guide)" (IS030).



Figure 7-80 Logical Disk Configuration Screen (LD Individual Bind/Unbind Screen)

#### (A) Configuration tree view

The configuration tree view shows disk configurations in the disk array, classifying them into four categories in the form of a tree:

• Dynamic Pool

Indicates dynamic pool(s) already bound in the disk array.

• Basic Pool

Indicates basic pool(s) already bound in the disk array.

• Spare

Indicates spare(s) already bound in the disk array.

• Unused

Indicates physical disk(s) that remain unassigned to any pool or spare.

(B) Detailed information view

The detailed information view shows any of the following information according to the selection in the configuration tree view:

#### <When you select a disk configuration>

The number of basic pools, number of dynamic pools, number of spares, and number of unused logical disks are displayed by the category.

#### <When you select Dynamic Pool>

Pools already bound are listed.

• [Pool] tab

The [Pool] tab shows the name, RAID type, capacity, and so forth about the pool selected. You can expand the capacity of the pool, rename it, change the rebuild time, and unbind the pool on this tab.

#### <When you select individual component of a dynamic pool>

Detailed information about the pool is displayed on the [Logical Disk] tab and [Physical Disk] tab:

• [Logical Disk] tab

The [Logical Disk] tab shows a list of logical disks bound in the pool. You can expand the capacity of the logical disks, rename it, or unbind the logical disks on this tab.

• [Physical Disk] tab

The [Physical Disk] tab shows a list of physical disks that compose the pool.

#### <When you select Basic Pool>

Pools already bound are listed.

• [Pool] tab

The [Pool] tab shows the name, RAID type, capacity, and so forth about the pool selected. You can rename the pool, change the rebuild time, and unbind the pool on this tab.

#### <When you select individual component of a basic pool>

Detailed information about the pool is displayed on the [Logical Disk] tab and [Physical Disk] tab:

• [Logical Disk] tab

The [Logical Disk] tab shows a list of logical disks bound in the pool. You can rename the logical disks, change the format time, and unbind the logical disks on this tab.

• [Physical Disk] tab The [Physical Disk] tab shows a list of physical disks that compose the pool.

#### <When you select Spare>

The spares already set up are listed. You can unbind spares on this screen.

#### <When you select Unused>

Physical disk(s) that remain unassigned to any pool or spare are listed.

(C) Binding Wizard area

This area provides the following buttons for binding a pool, logical disks, and a spare:

• [Pool Binding] button

Starts the wizard for binding a pool. Bind a new pool following the steps on the wizard.

• [LD Binding] button

Starts the wizard for binding logical disks. Bind logical disks following the steps on the wizard. For details on how to bind logical disks, refer to 7.2.1 "Binding Logical Disks".

• [Spare Binding] button

Starts the wizard for binding a spare. Set an unused physical disk as a spare following the steps on the wizard. For details on how to bind a spare, refer to 0 "

Binding a Spare".

The following buttons start a wizard for binding a volume for snapshot operation. These buttons are available with a valid DynamicSnapVolume license

For how to bind volumes, refer to the "Snapshot User's Manual (Function Guide)" (IS030).

• [SRA Binding] button

Starts the wizard for binding an SRA (snapshot reserve area). Bind a new SRA following the steps on the wizard.

• [Generation Adding] button

Starts the wizard for adding a generation. Add a generation following the steps on the wizard.

• [LV Binding] button

Starts the wizard for binding a link-volume. Bind a link-volume following the steps on the wizard.

# 7.4.2 Logical Disk Configuration Screen

Selecting a disk configuration in the logical disk configuration screen shows a list of constituents of the disk array.

👺 LD Individual Bind/Unbind			×
Configuration list			
Disk	Configuration   Disk Configuration Informati	.on.	
O000h P Spare Unused Unused Unused Unused	e Number of Element ynamic Pool asic Pool pare nused	2 1 1 0	
Dinding Wigsed			
Binding wizard Binding operations with wizard.	Pool Binding	LD Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding
	SHA Binding	eneration Adding	L <u>V</u> Binding
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo	Close	]	Help

Figure 7-81 Logical Disk Configuration Screen (LD Individual Bind/Unbind Screen)

The detailed information view displays the following information:

- Type: Constituents of the disk array (basic pool, dynamic pool, spare, and unused)
- Number of Elements: Number of constituents by the type



## 7.4.3 Pool List View

Selecting Basic Pool or Dynamic Pool in the configuration tree view shows the pool list view.

### (1) [Pool] tab

For each of the pools displayed, you can expand its capacity, change its rebuild time, rename it, and unbind it on this tab. If you select Dynamic Pool for using snapshots, you can expand the snapshot reserve area (SRA), change the threshold, and unbind the snapshot reserve area (SRA). For operation of snapshots, refer to the "Snapshot User's Manual (Function Guide)".

LD Individual Bind/Unbind			
Configuration list			
2200/0037 Dynamic Pool 0001h Basic Pool Spare Unused	Pool Pool configuratio Pool Name PAIL ODD1 Pool Name PAIL ODD1 Pool Name PAIL Pool Pool Name PAIL Pool Pool Name PAIL Pool Pool Pool Pool Pool Pool Pool Pool	n information and setting. D Capacity[GB] Used Capaci 6 396.0	(Number of Pools : 1) ity[GB] Snapshot Capacity[( 175.0 2
			Page Vare
	capacity <u>k</u> xpansion		Change Name
	SRA E <u>xp</u> ansion	Change Threshold	SRA Unbind
			Pool <u>U</u> nbind
Sinding Wizard Binding operations with wi	zard. <u>P</u> ool Binding	LD Binding	Spare Binding

Figure 7-82 Pool List View - [Pool] Tab

The pool list view displays the following information:

• Number:	Number of the pool (hexadecimal, 4 digits)
Pool Name:	Name of the pool (up to 32 characters)
• RAID:	RAID type of the pool
• Capacity[GB]:	Capacity of the pool (up to one decimal place)
• Used Capacity[GB]:	Capacity used by the logical disks in the pool (up to one decimal place)

• Snapshot Capacity [GB]:	Capacity bound as a snapshot reserve area (up to one decimal place)
• Snapshot Used Capacity [GB]:	Capacity used by the snapshot (up to one decimal place)
Snapshot Threshold [GB]:	Specified threshold capacity for the snapshot used capacity (up to one decimal place)
• Number of LDs:	Number of logical disks used in the pool
• Number of PDs:	Number of physical disks that compose the pool



# 7.4.4 Pool Information View

Selecting a basic pool or dynamic pool in the configuration tree view shows the pool info view. You can see the information about the pool by the physical disk and logical disk.

### (1) [Logical Disk] tab

The [Logical Disk] tab shows a list of logical disks used in the pool. For the logical disks displayed, you can expand their capacity, change the rebuild time, rename them, and unbind them on this tab. If you select Dynamic Pool for using snapshots, you can unbind generations. For operation of snapshots, refer to the "Snapshot User's Manual (Function Guide)" (IS030).

S2800/0037	Logical D	isk Physi	cal Disk			
0000h		Pool confi	guration infor	mation and set	ing. (LDs) (Num	ber of LDs : 60)
0001h	Number	OS Type	LD Name	Capacity[GB]	Snapshot Type RPL	Type
Spare	💕 0002h	. WIN	RPL_MV0002	1.0	IV	
ondsed	0003h	WN	RPL_MV0003	1.0	IV	
	🔐 0004h	WN	RPL_MV0004	1.0	IV	
	🔐 0005h	WN	RPL_MV0005	1.0	IV	
	🃅 0006h	WN	RPL_MV0006	1.0	IV	
	🔐 0007h	WN	RPL_MV0007	1.0	IV	
	🔐 0009h	WN	RPL_MV0009	1.0	IV	
	🔐 🖗 000ah	WN	RPL_MV000A	1.0	IV	
	🌮 000ьь	UN	RPL_MV000B	1.0	IV	
	🔐 000ch	เพท	RPL_MV000C	1.0	IV	
	🔐 000 dh	WN	RPL_MV000D	1.0	IV	
	🔐 🖗 000eh	WN	RPL_MV000E	1.0	IV	
	🗗 000 fh	เพท	RPL_MV000F	1.0	IV	
	🔐 0010h	WN	RPL_MV0010	1.0	IV	-
	191 001 11	1.797	BBI MICOLL	1.0	TTT	
	Capaci	ty <u>E</u> xpansi	.on	Change <u>T</u> ime	. Chang	je N <u>a</u> me
			G	eneration Unb <u>i</u> n	d LD	Unbind
ding Wigord						
inding operations with w	izard.	<u>P</u> ool Bin	ding	<u>L</u> D Bindi	ng <u>S</u>	pare Binding
		ant news	line a		d d i m m	TTT DI U

Figure 7-83 Pool Information View - [Logical Disk] Tab

The [Logical Disk] tab displays the following information. However, [Snapshot Type] and [RPL Type] are displayed only when each license is canceled.

- Number: Number of the logical disk (hexadecimal, 4 digits)
- OS Type: Format of the logical disk
- LD Name: Name of the logical disk (up to 24 characters)

• Capacity [GB]:	Capacity	of the logical disk (up to one decimal place)				
• Snapshot Type:	Type of the use of the snapshot					
	Blank:	Volume that is not used for snapshots				
	BV:	Base-volume. This volume has a snapshot generation.				
	LV:	Link-volume. This volume is necessary for substantiating snapshot generations, etc.				
	SDV:	Snapshot-data-volume. This is a special logical disk configuring a snapshot reserve area (SRA).				
	SV:	Snapshot-volume. This is a snapshot generation volume.				
	SV*:	A type of snapshot-volume, which is an illegal volume that is not set as a				
		generation. As this volume cannot be used for a snapshot, unbind the logical				
		disk.				
• RPL Type:	Type of th	e volume used for replication				
	Blank:	Cannot be used as a replication volume.				
	IV:	Not used as a replication volume.				
	MV:	Used as the copy-source volume.				
	RV:	Used as the copy-destination volume.				
	RV/MV:	Used as both RV and MV.				



### (2) [Physical Disk] tab

🕅 I D Individual Bind/Unbind			X
a) to fileridae billa, orbita			
Configuration list			
S2800/0021	Logical Disk Physical Disk		
Basic Pool O001h Basic Pool O000h Spare Unused	Number         Capacity[GB]           00h-02h         66.6           00h-03h         66.6           00h-04h         66.6           00h-05h         66.6           00h-06h         66.6           00h-07h         66.6	mation (PDs).	(Number of PDs : 6)
Binding Wizard Binding operations with wi	zard. <u>P</u> ool Binding	LD Binding	Spare Binding
	S <u>R</u> A Binding	Generation Adding	L <u>V</u> Binding

The [Physical Disk] tab shows a list of physical disks used in the pool.

Figure 7-84 Pool Information View - [Physical Disk] Tab

The [Physical Disk] tab displays the following information:

- Number: Number of the physical disk
   PD group number (hexadecimal, 2 digits) + PD number (hexadecimal, 2 digits)
- Capacity [GB]: Capacity of the physical disk (up to one decimal place)

## 7.4.5 Spare List View

Selecting Spare in the configuration tree view shows a list of spares. You can unbind spares on this screen.

D Individual Bind/Unbind			
onfiguration list			
	7		
am S2800/0021 Spare ⊡ <sup>PL</sup> ≠ Dynamic Pool	I		
0000h SP			
Basic Rool	Disk configuration inf	ormation (Spares).	(Number of PDs : 1)
Spare Numb	er Capacity[GB]		
Unused	h-06h 133.1		
			Spare <u>U</u> nbind
nding Wizard			
Binding operations with wizard.	Pool Binding	LD Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding
	S <u>R</u> A Binding	Generation Adding	L <u>V</u> Binding
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo	Clos	2	Help

Figure 7-85 Spare List View

The spare list view displays the following information:

- Number: Number of the physical disk
   PD group number (hexadecimal, 2 digits) + PD number (hexadecimal, 2 digits)
- Capacity [GB]: Capacity of the physical disk (up to one decimal place)

## 7.4.6 Unused Disk List View

Selecting Unused in the configuration tree view shows a list of unused disks.

🚰 LD Individual Bind/Unbind					2
Configuration list					
	.1				
Em S280070021 Or	nused				1
0001h	4				
DO02h	Diske	onfiguration	information	(unused PDs).	(Number of PDs : 0)
₩ 0000ъ	Number C	apacity[GB]			
Spare Uniced	7 00h-09h	67.1			
	🗗 00h-0ah	67.1			
	🗗 00h-0bh	67.1			
- Dinding Wigord					
Binding wizard					1
Binding operations with wizar	d. <u>P</u> ool	. Binding		LD Binding	<u>S</u> pare Binding
	25.1	Rin din a	1	wation Adding	III Dinding
	5 <u>R</u> A	sunding	Gene	reston Adding	Ly Similing
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo			Close		Help

Figure 7-86 Unused Disk List View

The unused disk list view displays the following information:

- Number: Number of the physical disk
   PD group number (hexadecimal, 2 digits) + PD number (hexadecimal, 2 digits)
- Capacity [GB]: Capacity of the physical disk (up to one decimal place)

# Chapter 8 Disk Array Configuration Setting (S100/S1100/S1200/S1300/S2100/S2200/ S2300)

This chapter describes how to set the configuration of the disk array in S100/S1100/S1200/S1300/S2100/S2200/S2300. For configuration setting in S400/S1400/S2400/S2800, refer to Chapter 7.

# 8.1 Binding a RANK

The RANK is bound by specifying the physical disks and the RAID type for binding RAID from the physical disks installed on the disk array. Then, for the RANK thus bound, logical disks can be bound by binding logical disks.

When extending physical disks, logical disks can be bound for the extended physical disks in accordance with the same procedure, thus not affecting the logical disks on other RANKs already in use. Even when new logical disks are additionally bound for the same RANK, they do not affect the already bound logical disks.

Regarding LD binding, selections can be made from the following configurations, thus making possible a different configuration for each RANK.

Logical disk configuration:	RAID1	(1+1)
	RAID5	(2+P)/(3+P)/(4+P)/(5+P)/(6+P)/
		(7+P)/(8+P)/(9+P)/(10+P)/(11+P)/
		(12+P)/(13+P)/(14+P)
	RAID0	1/3/5/10/15
	RAID10	(2+2)/(3+3)/(4+4)/(5+5)/(6+6)/(7+7)

\* Only Windows and Solaris can specify RAID0. However, do not use RAID0 in a highly reliable system (e.g., cluster environment) because RAID0 has no redundancy.

.....

Logical disks are bound for the 3000/4000 series disk array when it is initially installed.

To bind logical disks, refer to the following descriptions.

RANK Bind (8.1.1)

RANK Unbind (8.1.2)

Expanding a RANK (8.1.3)

Setting RANK Rebuild Time (8.1.4)

Disk Array	7 Name : S2300/0434		PD <u>G</u> roup Number 00 🔽 h
D (Legen	d:RANK/Spare:Unused)		RANK (Number of Resources: 7)
00 00 01 02	03 04 05 06 07 08 09 0a 0b 0c 0d 0e	RANK Bind	00 00 01
			01 02
		RANK	02 03
	RANK Bind	<u>U</u> nbind	03 04
	Capacity Expansion	Conocity	04 05 06 07
	Spare Bind	Expansion	05 09 0a 0b 0c 0d -
	Spare Unbind		
	Rebuild <u>S</u> tart Instruction Change Rebuild <u>Time</u>	Spare B <u>i</u> nd 	Change         Rebuild         Start <u>R</u> ebuild         Instruction
	Unselect	Spare	Spare (Number of Resources: O
	Properties	Unbin <u>d</u>	

Figure 8-1 RANK/Spare Tab Screen

## 8.1.1 RANK Bind

Selecting unused PDs enables this button, thus making it possible to bind RANKs. Refer to Figure 8-1 "RANK/Spare Tab Screen".

. .





Click the [RANK Bind] button to display the following dialog.

	_ Information		
	PD Group Number	: 00h RANK Number : 02h	
	PD Number :	06h,07h,08h,09h,0ah	
	RAID Type	Rebuild Time	
ſ	• RAID 5( <u>5</u> )	RANK Rebuild Time can be	
	C RAID 1(1)	default).	
$\boldsymbol{1}$	C RAID 10(A)	Specify <u>R</u> ebuild Time	-
	C RAID 0( <u>0</u> )	Rebuild Time(0-24) 0 - Hour[s]	
U	C RAID 3(3)	(0:Operates by the fastest)	

Figure 8-3 RANK Bind Confirmation Dialog

RAID types satisfying the following conditions can be specified:

- RAID type supported by the disk array
- RAID type of a RANK that can be bound with the selected number of physical disks

The following message is displayed if there are no RAID types of RANKs that can be bound with the selected number of physical disks.



Figure 8-4 Message if Binding a RANK is Impossible

To bind a RANK, click the [OK] button in the RANK Bind confirmation dialog box. Binding a RANK does not take much time.

(a) and (b) in the diagram are described below.

(a) RAID Type

The selectable RAID type varies depending on the number of selected PDs. The list is shown in Table 8-1 for your reference.

			-	-			5	Selecte	ed PD	Coun	t		-	-		
RAID Type	Target Disk	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	Array															
RAID0	100/1000/2000	$\checkmark$	-		I	$\checkmark$	1	-	-	-	$\checkmark$	1	-	-	1	$\checkmark$
RAID1	Series	-	$\checkmark$	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
RAID5		-	-		$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$										$\checkmark$
RAID10		-	-	-	$\checkmark$	-	$\checkmark$	-	$\checkmark$	-	$\checkmark$	-	$\checkmark$	-	$\checkmark$	-

Table 8-1 Selectable RAID Types

 $\sqrt{}$ : Select enable -: Select disable

(b) Rebuild Time

Specifies the maximum time required for rebuilding the RANK. It is possible to select 0 to 24 hours as Rebuild Time. Select 0 to perform rebuilding in the shortest amount of time. In consideration of the host I/O load, set a suitable value for Rebuild Time. Moreover, the time is an indication and it does not always take the time as specified.

# 8.1.2 RANK Unbind

Selecting a RANK from the PD window or the RANK window on the RANK/Spare Tab screen (Figure 8-1) enables RANK Unbind.

. .



Figure 8-5 RANK Unbind

If LDs are already bound in the RANK to unbind, a message as follows will appear asking whether to unbind the LDs or not.





Figure 8-6 RANK/LD Unbind Check

Select [Yes] to unbind the LDs and RANK.

⚠
If LDs in the RANK are in the following states, it is impossible to unbind them.
1. Managed by the Access Control (PORT Mode).
2. Managed by the Access Control (WWN Mode)
3. Pairing is performed.
Execute the unbinding after removing these conditions.



# 8.1.3 Expanding a RANK

Selecting unused PDs after selecting the RAID5 RANK from the PD window or the RANK window on the

RANK/Spare Tab screen (Figure 8-1) enables the [Capacity Expansion] button.

\* Only Windows and Solaris can use this function.



Figure 8-7 Capacity Expansion

Click the [Capacity Expansion] button to display the following dialog.

Capacity Expansion 🛛 🗙	]
Please specify necessary items for capacity expansion.	
Information	
PD Group Number : 00h	
RANK Number : Olh	
PD Number : Odh	
Expansion Time RANK expansion time can be specified([10] will be set by default).	
Specify Expansion Time	(a)
Expansion <u>T</u> ime (0-24) 10 Hour[s] (0:Operates by the fastest)	J
OK Cancel	

Figure 8-8 Capacity Expansion Confirmation Dialog

Click the [OK] button to execute the capacity expansion.

(a) Expansion Time

Specifies the maximum time required for rebuilding the RANK. It is possible to select 0 to 24 hours as Rebuild Time. When 0 is specified, the rebuilding is performed at the maximum speed. Moreover, the time is an indication and it does not always take the time as specified.

When extending multiple physical disks, extend them one by one. Make sure that the extension of one disk has been completed before extending the next physical disk.

When the capacity expansion is successful, end the configuration setting and check the iSM client screen until the completion. As shown in Figure 8-9, the expansion is completed when the display is changed from "Attn. (expanding)" to "Ready".



🚰 State - Storage2100/10\Log	ical Disk						_ 🗆 ×
<u>File View Operation H</u> elp							
] 🗲 🗙 🗞 🖾 🖓 🍎 🕝	Access	Control	A ALL				•
SM Server	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	State	RAID	Capacit	RPL Type
🕂 🖓 🖓 Storage4100/11	攪 000eh		200000004C5176350	Ready	5	12.5	
🖻 😲 Storage2100/10	攪 000fh		200000004C5176350	Ready	5	12.5	
E Cogical Disk							
Physical Disk							
	I						

Figure 8-9 Capacity Expansion State



Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

# 8.1.4 Setting RANK Rebuild Time

### (1) Change Rebuild Time

By Change Rebuild Time, it is possible to change the data rebuild time when the failure occurs at the RANK selected on the RANK/Spare Tab screen (Figure 8-1).

Selecting RANKs from the PD window or the RANK window enables [Change Rebuild Time].



Figure 8-10 Change Rebuild Time

Click the [Change Rebuild Time] button to display the following dialog.

Cha	ange Rebuild Time		х						
C	Change the Rebuild Information	Time.	7						
	PD Group Number	: 00h							
	RANK Number	: 01h							
	Rebuild Time	: 10 Hour[s]							
	Rebuild Time RANK Rebuild Time can be specified.								
	Rebuild Time(0-24) 0 Hour[s]								
	(0:Operates by the fastest)								
	OK	Cancel							

Figure 8-11 Change Rebuild Time Setting

Changing the Rebuild Time and then clicking the [OK] button result in changing the Rebuild Time. For the Rebuild Time, 0 to 24 hours can be selected. Select 0 to perform rebuilding in the shortest amount of time. In consideration of the host I/O load, set a suitable value for Rebuild Time.

The RANK Rebuild Time is specified during RANK building. Here, considering the host I/O load, the Rebuild Time can be changed.

### (2) Rebuild Start Instruction

If one of the physical disks configuring a logical disk fails, the logical disk is placed in the Reduce state and the RANK which includes this logical disk is also placed in the Reduce state. When the RANK is in the Reduce state, data can be rebuilt during operations by using the [Rebuild Start Instruction].

The [Rebuild Start Instruction] button is enabled when a reduced RANK is selected in the PD window or RANK window and when a spare disk is selected in this status.

To confirm the reduced status of a RANK, display the main screen of the iSM client.



Figure 8-12 Rebuild Start Instruction





Click the [Rebuild Start Instruction] button to display the following dialog.

Figure 8-13 Rebuild Start Instruction Confirmation

Click the [OK] button to start rebuilding.

(a), (b), and (c) in the diagram are described.

(a) Information

The specified RANK and PD group are displayed.

When this dialog is output by selecting the spare, the spare for rebuilding is displayed.

(b) Target PD

When only reducing RANK is selected, it is necessary to specify the rebuild target disk.

\* Rebuild Instruction

Target Disk Number contains the PD number configuring the RANK. Therefore, when the PD is replaced with a normal PD, specify the PD number.

\* Instruction of Rebuild to Spare Disk

For the Instruction of Rebuild to Spare Disks, the Spare disk is automatically determined by the disk array. Therefore, specify the target disk number by entering the number of the failed physical disk.

#### (c) Rebuild Time

Specifies the maximum time required for rebuilding the RANK. It is possible to select 0 to 24 hours as Rebuild Time. Select 0 to perform rebuilding in the shortest amount of time. In consideration of the host I/O load, set a suitable value for Rebuild Time. Moreover, the time is an indication and it does not always take the time as specified.

------

Change the RANK Rebuild Time by using the "Change Rebuild Time" previously described.

# 8.2 Method of Binding Logical Disks

To bind logical disks, refer to the following descriptions.

Binding Logical Disks (8.2.1)

Unbinding Logical Disks (8.2.2)

Setting Logical Disk Bind Time (8.2.3)

Logical Disk Batch Setting (8.2.4)

🚰 LD Individual Bind	d/Unbind			×					
RANK/Spare LD									
Select-									
Disk Array Na	me : S2300	/0434	PD <u>G</u> r	oup Number <mark>00 🔽</mark> h					
LD (Legend	Bound	:Free Space)	(Numb	er of Resources: 214)					
RANK 02h 33.2 GB RAIDO	PD:03h			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •					
RANK 03h 33.2 GB RAIDO		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Unused LD Bind LD Unbind					
RANK 04h 66.5 GB RAID5 (2+P)	PD:04h			Change Ownership Change Eormat Time Properties					
	PD:05h,06	h,07h		<b></b>					
LD Unbind LD Bind Change Ownership Change Format Time									
Get Disk Arrs	ay I <u>n</u> fo.	Close		Help					

Figure 8-14 LD Individual Bind/Unbind

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.
### 8.2.1 Binding Logical Disks

In this dialog, LD binding/unbinding can be performed. The operation can be performed by using the popup menu (right-click) or the buttons on the screen after selecting a logical disk or free space of RANK on the LD Individual Bind/Unbind screen (Figure 8-14).

Selecting a free space of RANK will enable the [LD Bind] button.





Click the [LD Bind] button to display the following screen.

	LD Individual Bind			×		
	Please specify necessary	items for LD bind.				
	General Setting	General Setting				
(	O Only specify the number	er of LDs				
	C Only specify LD Capac:	ity				
	• Specify both the number	er of LDs and LD Capaci	ty			
	Specify the number of LDs	Specify the LD capacity				
	Please specify the	Please choose the spect already LD bind is spect be bind.	fication method of LD capacity. If an rified, the LD of the same capacity ca	n		
(a) <	number of LDs.	LD bind capa	city: 35,648,438,272 Bytes			
	Number <u>o</u> f LDs	• Specify LD capacity				
		LD Capacity	(0.1-33.2) 33.2 📩 GB			
	(1-36) 1	C Specify the same ca	pacity as the existing LD			
		LD Number	h Reference.			
C	Setup of Ownership		-Detailed Setup	h		
(b) ≺	Only if Cross Call is OF specify the Controller o	F, it is necessary to f Ownership.	The detailed setup of LD can be	) ) (d)		
	Current Cross Call : ON $\Box$ Controller( $\underline{0}$ )		performed.			
Ų	.	Controller( <u>1</u> )		IJ		
ſ	Setting LD Type/Name					
	LD type and name can be specified(It is also possible to set after binding).					
(c) {	If the number of LDs is two or more. LD Number will be added at the end of specified name					
	05 <u>Typ</u> e A2 💌 Na	me 20000004C7F049E	(become xxx0000).			
		OK	Cancel			

Figure 8-16 LD Bind Dialog

Clicking the [OK] button after specifying the required particulars in this screen will start the LD binding.

(a), (b), (c), and (d) in the screen are described as follows.

- (a) General Setting
  - LD Setting

The number of LDs and the LD Capacity are specified here. It is also possible to specify either of them. When only the number of LD is specified, the maximum capacity that can be created is automatically calculated.

When only the LD Capacity is specified, the maximum number of logical disks that can be created is calculated.

If having specified LD Capacity, you can either enter a numeric value or specify a bound logical disk. To bind logical disks having the same capacity as for a bound one, you should select [Only specify LD capacity]. Logical disks having the same capacity are necessary for using the data replication function\*. Clicking the [Reference] button in Figure 8-16 displays the screen below.

D Specification				×
Please specify the	LD of the sam	e capacity as '	the LD to bind.	_
Not Specify Reason	n Number 🛆	Capacity[GB]	RAID Type	
	003fh	0.2	RAIDO	
	0040h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0041h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0043h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0044h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0045h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0046h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0047h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0048h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0049h	0.2	RAIDO	
	0050h	22.1	RAID5 (2+P)	
	0051h	22.1	RAID5 (2+P)	
	0052h	22.1	RAID5 (2+P)	
	0053h	33.2	RAIDO	
	0054h	0.1	RAID5 (4+P)	
	0055h	0.1	RAID5 (4+P)	
	0K		Cancel	

Figure 8-17 LD Specification Screen

The figure shows an example of binding logical disks by selecting 10 GB of free space for the RANK of RAID5 (3+P).

Selecting a logical disk from the list makes it possible to bind another logical disk having the same capacity as that selected one. If a logical disk cannot be selected, the "Not Specify Reason" field displays one of the reasons:

Excess of capacity:

The capacity of this logical disk exceeds the free space of the RANK.

 Capacity unit disagreement: No logical disk can be bound that will have the same capacity as this logical disk.

For detailed reasons for capacity unit disagreement or information on binding logical disks having a different configuration from the already bound RAID configuration, refer to Appendix D "Notes on Use for Data Replication".

⚠

The logical disk number selection in the LD Bind dialog and the number display item in the LD specification screen can be replaced with logical disk names. For information on the settings, refer to "Client Start/Stop" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with the OS in use. Note that, if the detailed display is selected for the LD specification screen, the display order of the numbers and logical disk names in the list is changed.

- \* Refer to the "Data Replication User's Manual (Function Guide)" (IS015) for the data replication function.
- (b) Setup of Ownership

At Cross Call OFF, the controller must be specified.

At Cross Call ON, this setting is disabled; however, settings are made with controller 0. For information on the Cross Call, refer to 8.5.1 "Cross Call and Auto Assignment". For information on the LD Ownership, refer to 8.5.2 "Ownership".

(c) Setting LD Type/Name

For the logical disks to be bound, it is also possible to simultaneously set its type and name. The LD name needs to be unique in the system (no two names are allowed). Therefore, when binding two or more logical disks, LD names consisting of a specified character string to which a sequence number is a sequential number is added are automatically given.

Example: DiskName0000, DiskName0001, DiskName0002 ...

The details of item are the same as (G) "Setting LD Type/Name" of 8.2.4 "Logical Disk Batch Setting".

- (d) Detailed Setup
  - Start LD Number

An unused numbers following the specified LD Number is allocated. When omitted (with Start LD Number disabled), the number immediately after the maximum among the LD Numbers in use is allocated.

Example: The numbers allocated when LD Numbers 0, 1, 3 and 4 exist are as follows.

Omitted:	5, 6, 7
0 specified:	2, 5, 6
10 specified:	10, 11, 12

• Format Time

1

Specifies the maximum LD Format Time.

It is possible to select 0 to 24 hours as Format Time. When 0 is specified, the formatting is performed at the maximum speed. Moreover, the time is an indication and it does not always take the time as specified.

The specified time is the standard time required. However, the actual execution time varies with the load of the disk array.

Specify 0 to complete the LD binding at the maximum speed. If the business operation I/O is preferred, specify a large value (such as 24) to lower the load to the Disk Array.

.....



# 8.2.2 Unbinding Logical Disks

Selecting a bound LD enables the [LD Unbind] button.



Figure 8-18 LD Unbind

Click the [LD Unbind] button to display a message box as shown below.

iSM	×
⚠	[25607] Following LD will be unbound.
	Number:0000h OS Type : Name : 200000004C517635001E
	Once LD is unbound, all data will be lost.
	Is it ok?
	Yes No

Figure 8-19 LD Unbind Confirmation Message

Select [Yes] from this screen to unbind the logical disk.

If the logical disks are in the following states, it is impossible to unbind them.
Managed by the Access Control (PORT mode).
Managed by the Access Control (WWN mode).
Pairing is performed.
Execute the unbinding after removing these conditions.

# 8.2.3 Setting Logical Disk Bind Time

Changes the format time of logical disks being bound.

This setting, which acts upon the whole disk array, is unrelated to selecting a logical disk. Clicking this button displays a dialog box as shown below, thus making it possible to change the Format Time.

Specifies the maximum required Format Time.

It is possible to select 0 to 24 hours as Format Time. When 0 is specified, the formatting is performed at the maximum speed. Moreover, the time is an indication and it does not always take the time as specified.

Change Format Time 🔀
Change the Format Time of the formatting LD. Here is to change the Format Time of all LD of the Disk Array Subsystem.
Format Time
LD Format Time can be specified.
Format Time (0-24) 10 🔭 Hour[s]
(0:Operates by the fastest)
0K Cancel

Figure 8-20 Change Format Time Dialog

<b></b>	
Specify 0 to complete the LD binding at the maximum speed.	If the business operation I/O is preferred, specify a
large value (such as 24) to lower the load to the Disk Array.	



# 8.2.4 Logical Disk Batch Setting

All the physical disks or unused physical disks mounted on the disk array are specified and all the logical disks are bound in the same RAID type with the same LD Capacity. Please note that when binding all physical disks, if the required data has been stored in the operating disk array, the data recorded in all the logical disks in use is erased. Please be careful about it. If the data in use are necessary, select unused physical disks or bind logical disks newly from unused physical disks through individual bind.

There are the following four logical disk configurations which can be selected.

•	High reliability:	RAID1 (1+1)	Consisting of two PDs, the RANK Capacity is the same as that of about one
			PD.
•	Standard:	RAID5 (4+P)	Consisting of five PDs, the RANK Capacity is the same as that of about four
			PDs.
•	Large capacity:	RAID5 (6+P)	Consisting of seven PDs, the RANK Capacity is the same as that of about six
			PDs.
•	Huge capacity:	RAID5 (8+P)	Consisting of nine PDs, the RANK Capacity is the same as that of about eight
			PDs.

The LD Batch Binding refers to bind multiple logical disks in a batch in accordance with simple parameter instructions such as the RAID type and the number of logical disks. The procedure and precautions for its execution are described below.

# ⚠

To collectively bind logical disks, selecting all physical disks, first unbind all configurations already made. Therefore, please note that all the RANKs and logical disks that are already bound will be unbound.

### (1) Execution procedure

The procedure for Batch Binding of logical disks is as follows. The screen transition is shown in Figure 8-21.

- (i) Select the disk array from the iSM client main screen and then start [Configuration] from the menu or from the toolbar.
- (ii) Click [Setting] from the "Select Operation Mode" dialog.
- (iii) Click the [LD Bind] button on "Configuration- [Setting Mode]" to display the LD Batch Binding screen.(For details of the LD Batch Binding screen, refer to 8.2.4 (5) "LD Batch Binding screen".)
- (iv) Set the necessary item on the LD Batch Binding screen and then click the [OK] button to output the LD Batch Binding Confirmation screen. (For details of display items, refer to 8.2.4 (6) "Confirm LD Batch Binding screen".)

(v) If there is no problem with the value to bind, click the [Yes] button. LD Batch Binding will start.

Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1259         Operation Mode         Operation Mode         Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Setting         Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Setting         Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Setting Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Setting Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Setting Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Setting Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Setting Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Setting Name : Storage2100/1259         Batch Binding Screen         Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1259         Disk Array Subsystem can read stor	
Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258  Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258  Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258  Batch Setting Disk Array Subsystem Information Disk Information Disk Information Disk Information Disk Array Subsystem Information Disk Array Subsystem Information Disk Array Subsystem Information Disk Information Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258 Disk Array Name : Storage2105 Disk Array Name : Oth Number of Engentry Disk Array Na	
Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1259         Operation Node         Disk Array Subsystem Cancer         Setting         Disk Array Subsystem Information         Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1259         Poly Group Namber 00 * h         Physical Target Disk         Rease of Storing DaBHE         Setting BARE         Storing DaBHE         Storing DaBHE         Setting BARE         Colory Spare: I         Setting BARE	
Operation Node       Disk Array Subsystem can be set.         Betting       Pisk Array Subsystem Information         Betting       Disk Array Subsystem Information         Disk Array Name: Scoregoll00/1259       Product ID :: \$2100 Disk Array Subsystem Can be set.         Back Binding       Close         Close       LD Bind         Place use to the time of initial ininitial inininitial inininitial initial initial ininininitial initi	
Operation Mode       Disk Array Subsystem can be set.         getting       Setting Mode]       Configuration-[Setting Mode]       Configuration-[Setting Mode] Screen         Before the set of initial inininitial inininitial initial initial ininini initial ini	
getting       Pisk Array Nues: Storage2100/1259         Pisk Array Nues: Storage2100/1259       Pisk Array Nues: Storage2100/1259         Pisk Array Nues: Storage2100/1259       Pisk Array Subsystem         Batch Setting       More than one LD in the Disk Array Subsystem         Close       LD Bind         Please use it at the time of initial initial and so on.       Hore than one LD or Disk Array Subsystem can one LD or Disk Array Subsystem can one LD or Disk Array Subsystem can one collectively.         Reglication Setting       Setting Bickmane         Pelse tax the time of adding disk or collectively.         Indiv_1 Setting/Reference       LD Can be bound or unbound individually.         Please use it at the time of adding disk or collectively.         Indiv_1 Setting/Reference       LD Can be bound or unbound individually.         Please Use it at the time of adding disk or collectively.         Indiv_1 Setting/Reference       LD Can be bound or unbound individually.         Please Disk Array Name: Storage2100/1258       FD group Number 00 h         Whysical Targe Disk       RANK Information         Hare is the information of bound RANK according to the Cana be set up.       F Check Partitioning Yunchon of 1 for a check Array Subsystem can one of BANEs: 2         Setting Spare       Setting BAIK       Setting BAIK       Setting BAIK         Number of BAIRs: 1       Setting BAIK </th <th></th>	
getting       new of the set of parts         getting       pick Array Subsystem Information         Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258       Product ID : \$2100 Disk Array Subsystem         Batch Setting       Nore than one ID in the Disk Array Subsystem         Disk Array Name : 000000022001258         Batch Setting       Nore than one ID in the Disk Array Subsystem can one ID on Disk Array Subsystem         Close       ID Bind         Parts Setting Bickname       Please use it at the time of initial inininitial inininitial initial initial ininitial initial i	
Disk Array Subsystem Information         Disk Array Subsystem Information         Disk Array Subsystem Information         Batch Setting         Both Binding         LD Batch Binding Screen         Belet         Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1259         PD group Number Of         Physical Target Disk         C Unused 2D         C High Partitioning function:         Provide States will be calculated Ablos(if)         Maker of BANK:         Setting Spare         Setting Spare         Coll Setting States (IL Balance States)         Coll Setting Confirmation Screen         Setting Spare         Cohly specify the guaber of L	
Disk Array Make : Storage2100/1258         Batch Binding         Close         Disk Array Make : Storage2100/1258         Batch Setting         Batch Binding         LD Batch Binding Screen         Batch Binding Configuration.         Change Screen Screen </td <td></td>	
Beference       B         Serial Number : 0000000522001258         Serial Number : 0000000522001258         Batch Setting         Batch Setting         Batch Setting         Batch Setting         Batch Setting         Batch Buding         LD Batch Buding         Composition         LD Batch Buding         Composition and present Disk Array Subsystem can composition and present Disk Array Subsyst	
b       Batch Setting       Hore than one LD in the Disk Array Subsystee         Close       LD Bind       Phease use it at the time of initial install and so on.         Nore than one LD or Disk Array Subsystee can renamed collectively.       Peplication Setting       Nore than one LD or Disk Array Subsystee can renamed collectively.         Peplication Setting       Setting Bickname       Hore than one LD or Disk Array Subsystee can renamed collectively.         D Batch Binding       LD Bind/Unbind       Setting About replication can be done collectively.         D Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen       LD Can be bound or unbound individually.         Plasten Binding Screen       Individually.       Plasse use it at the time of adding disk continguation.         * UD Batch Binding Screen       Ingr of Disk Array Subsystem can the Access Control (WMN) from the ver, the access propriety to the LD can be set up.         * O' Unused DD       Palm Information       Here is the information of bound RANK according to the following setting (auto-calculated).         * Musher of Baumes of BAIRS:       2         * Setting Spare       Setting RANK:         * Musher of Bound Spares: 1       Setting RANK:         * Batch Beinding Confirmation Screet is the information of bound RANK according to revery businees.         * Can's effect the scale according to the following setting (auto-calculated).         * Musher of Bound Spares: 1<	
Close       Interference         LD Bind       Please use it at the time of initial install and so on.         Setting Bickname       Please use it at the time of initial install and so on.         Setting Bickname       Fore than one LD or Disk Array Subsystem can remamed collectively.         Setting Bickname       Free than one LD or Disk Array Subsystem can remamed collectively.         Setting Bickname       Individually.         Individually.       Issting/Reference         LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen         Setting Make :       Storage2100/1258         PD group Number OO In the the cases propriety to the LD can be sound or unbound individually.         Please use it at the time of adding disk or changing disk configuration.         O Unused ID       PD group Number OO In the Access propriety to the LD can be set up.         O Unused ID       EARNK Information of bound RANK according to the ID can be set up.         Here is the information of bound RANK according to the ID can be set up.       Code Partitioning Function II to the ID can be set up.         Setting Spare       Satting RANK         Sting ID       High Peliability RAID1(1+1)C Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)         Number of Bound Spares: 1       Sting RANK.         Setting ID       Spares full the Bound in this way.         Spareify the gumber of LDs       Independity	
LD Bind       D Bind       D Book Binding         Setting Bickname       Setting Bickname       Hore than one LD or Disk Array Subsystem can remaned collectively.         Beglication Setting       Collectively.         Indivs.1       Setting Bickname       Setting about replication can be done collectively.         D Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen       Edit State and so on.         D Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen       Indivs         Setting American Setting about replication can be done collectively.       Indivs         D Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen       Indivs         Setting Spare       D Group Number OD In       Physical Target Disk         C Unused ED       Mumber of BankK: 2       Setting Spare         Setting ID       Exting BAIK       Chick Farmer Disk Array Subsystem can be set up.         Setting ID       Chick Farmer Setting (Latt) (Lift) C Large Capacity RAIDS (6FP)         Number of Bound Spares: 1       Setting BAIK       Confirm LD Batch Binding Confirmation Scree         Only specify LD Gapacity       DD Cepacity (Ulife)       Spare, RAIK and LD will be bound in this way.         Specify LD Gapacity       Idv./POf/Set/Set/Set/Set/Set/Set/Set/Set/Set/Set	can
And so on. Setting Bickname Replication Setting Replication Setting Setting Bout replication can be done collectively. Setting about replication can be done collectively. Setting about replication can be done collectively. Individually. Please us it at the time of adding disk or collectively. D Batch Binding LD Batch Binding Screen Select D batch Binding Screen D batch Binding Screen Select D batch Binding Screen D batch Binding Screen D batch Binding Screen D copacity D Co	ation
Setting Bickname       Internamed collectively.         Reglication Setting       Setting about replication can be done collectively.         Individually.       Isetting/Reference         LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen         Select       Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258       PD group Number 00 Ph         Physical Target Disk       FD group Number 00 Ph       Individually.         Physical Target Disk       FD group Number 00 Ph       Individually.         C Unused pD       Hare is the information of bound RANK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).       Individe a coche renory.into a the ver, the access propriaty.         Number of Spares       Setting RANK       Setting RANK       Composition and present Disk Array business.         Setting ID       High Beliability PAID1(1+1)C Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)       ED Batch Binding Confirmation Screen         Number of LDS       Number of LDS       Number of LDS       Units of the sound in this way.         Setting ID       Help       Help       Standard RAIDS(4+P)       Spare, RAIK and LD will be bound in this way.         Specify both the number of LDS       Ind Capacity       Spare, Storage 2:00       Spares         Setting LD Typg/Name       Spares       :00       Spares       :00	he
Reglication Setting       Setting about replication can be done collectively.         Indiv_1       Setting/Reference       LD can be bound or unbound individually.         Please use it at the time of adding disk or changing disk configuration.       Please use it at the time of adding disk or changing disk configuration.         D Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen       Fings of Disk Array Subsystem can be done or unbound individually.         Select       Please use it at the time of adding disk or changing disk configuration.       Fings of Disk Array Subsystem can be done or the following setting (auto-calculated).         Physical Target Disk       PANN Information       For the following setting (auto-calculated).         Physical Target Disk       PANN Information       For the following setting (auto-calculated).         Number of ANNEs: 2       Setting RANK       Composition and present Disk Array business.         Setting Spare       Setting RANK       Comform LD Batch Binding Confirmation Screet         Number of Bound Spares: 1       Stangard RAIDS(4+P)       Huge Capacity RAIDS(6+P)         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Confirm LD Batch Binding Confirmation Screet         Only specify LD Gapacity       LD Genocity       (0.1-1)         Specify LD Gapacity       LD Capacity       Spare, RANK and LD will be bound in this way.         Specify LD Capacity       LD Spares       142,805,565,	De
Beginteeting       collectively.         Indivy       1 Setting/Reference         LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen         Select       Indivy         Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258       PD group Number 00 h         C Unused 2D       PANK Information         Here is the information of bound RANK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).       the Access Control (WWN) from the following setting (auto-calculated).         Number of Spares       Setting RANK         Setting Spare       Setting RANK         Setting LD       High Beliability RAID1(1+1) C Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)         Setting LD       Setting items for each RANK.         Unspecify LD Gapacity       LD Capacity         Only specify LD Gapacity       LD Capacity         Setting LD Typg/Name       Id Capacity	
Indiv       1 Setting/Reference         LD Eind/Unbind       LD can be bound or unbound individually.         D Batch Binding Screen       LD Eind/Unbind         Select       ings of Disk Array Subsystem can changing disk configuration.         O Winsed 2D       PD group Number 00 h         O Winsed 2D       NAMK Information         Here is the information       Here is the information of bound RAMK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).         Number of Spares       Setting RAMK         Setting Spare       Setting RAMK         Number of Bound Spares: 1       Setting RAMK         Setting LD       High Beliability RAID1(1+1) C Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)         Here are LD setting items for each RAMK.       Setting the quader of LDS         Only specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity         Specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity         Specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity         Stating LD       Index of LDS         Setting LD       Number of LDS         Specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity         Specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity         Specify LD Type/Name       Index of Spares         Setting LD Type/Name       Specify LD Type/Name	
LD Bind/Unbind       LD Can be bound or unbound individually.         D Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen         Select       ings of Disk Array Subsystem can changing disk configuration.         Select       ings of Disk Array Subsystem can changing disk configuration.         O Wussed 2D       PANK Information         O Wussed 2D       PANK Information         Mumber of 2 All the PD       PANK Information of bound RANK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).         Number of 3 Spares       Setting RANK         Setting Spare       Setting RANK         Setting LD       High Peliability RATD1(1+1) C Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)         Setting LD       Setting items for each RANK.         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Spares for each RANK.         Only specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity         O Only specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity         Spares ing LD       Ind Capacity         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Ind Capacity         Specify Lb Capacity       LD Capacity         Specify Lb Capacity       LD Capacity         Stating LD       Ind Capacity         Setting LD       Ind Capacity         Specify Lot the number of LDS       Ind Capacity         Specify Lot Type/Name       Ind Ca	
D Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen         Salect       ings of Disk Array Subsystem can ings of Disk Array Subsystem can bink Array Name : Storage2100/1258         Physical Target Disk       PANK Information         © Unused PD       Here is the information of bound RANK according to the following secting(auto-calculated).         Number of       Number of RANKs: 2         Setting Spare       Setting RANK         Number of Bound Spares: 1       Setting RANK         Setting LD       High Beliability RAID1(1+1) C Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)         Setting LD       Setting items for each RANK.         Only specify LD Capacity       ID Capacity         Solid Spareity       ID Capacity         Solid Spareity       ID Capacity         Setting LD       Number of LDs         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       ID Capacity         Spacify Lb Capacity       ID Capacity         Spacify Lot the number of LDs       142,805,565,440 B         Stating LD       Id Capacity         Maker of Spares       : 00h         Number of LDS       142,805,565,440 B         Number of Spares       : 00h	
D Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding Screen       I price of Disk Array Subsystem can be set up.         Select       Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258       PD Group Number 00 h         Physical Target Disk       PANK Information         G Unused PD       Physical Target Disk       PANK Information of bound RANK according to the Access propriety to the LD can be set up.         C All the PD       Physical Target Or PANKS: 2       Physical Target Disk         Setting Spare       Setting RANK       Setting RANK         Setting Spare       Setting RANK       Setting RANK         Setting LD       Setting the following AATD1(1+1) C Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)       Setting the following Confirm LD Batch Binding         Setting LD       Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Setting the guader of LDS       Number of LDS         Only specify LD Capacity       ID Capacity       ID Capacity       Spare, RANK and LD will be bound in this way.         Specify LD Capacity       142,805,565,440 B       FD Group Number       : 00h         Setting LD Typg/Name       Spare, Stares       : 0	
Select       Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258       FD Group Number 00 h       h         Physical Target Disk       RANK Information       h       h         © Unused ED       RANK Information of bound RANK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).       h       h         Mumber of All the FD       Rest is the information of bound RANK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).       h       h       h         Number of Bound Spares (0-1):       Setting RANK       Setting RANK       Setting RANK       composition and present Disk Array brainess.         Setting LD       Heigh Eeliability RAID1(1+1)C Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)       Standard RAID5(4+P)       Huge Capacity RAID5(8+P)         Setting LD       Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Image Capacity RAID5(8+P)       LD Batch Binding         Only specify LD Capacity       ID Capacity       ID Capacity       Spare, RANK and LD will be bound in this way.         Specify both the number of LDs       142,805,565,440 B       FD Group Number i Spares : 0       Number of Spares : 0	be
Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258     PD Group Number 00 h       Physical Target Disk     FAMK Information       © Unused 2D     FAMK Information       © Unused 2D     Family Spare       © All the PD     Here is the information of bound RANK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).       Number of ANRS: 2     Number of RANKS: 2       Setting Spare     Setting RANK       Number of Bound Spares: 1     Setting RANK       Setting LD     Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Here are LD setting times for each RANK.     (1-36)       Only specify LD Capacity     DD Capacity       Specify both the number of LDs and LD Capacity     Id2,505,565,440 B       Setting LD Type/Name     Id2,805,565,440 B	
Physical Target Disk       RANK Information         © Unused gD       Here is the information of bound RANK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).         Mumber of panes       Number of RANKs: 2         Setting Spare       Setting RANK         Number of Bound Spares: 1       Setting RANK         Setting LD       Setting items for each RANK.         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Number of LDS         Only specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity         Specify both the number of LDS       142,805,565,440 B         Setting LD       142,905,565,440 B         Momber of Spares       100 h	
• Unused gD       Here is the information of bound RAMK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).         • Linker of partitioning setting(auto-calculated).       In prefrict the amount of calculated calculated).         • Setting Spare       Setting RANK         • Number of Bound Spares: 1       • Setting RANK         • Setting ID       • Setting items for each RANK.         • Setting the guade of LDs       • Number of LDs         • Only specify LD Gapacity       • D Capacity         • Specify both the number of LDs       • D Capacity         • Setting LD       • D Capacity         • Setting the guade of LDs       • D Capacity         • Only specify LD Gapacity       • D Capacity         • Specify both the number of LDs       • D Capacity         • D Capacity       • D Capacity         • Setting LD Type/Name       • D Capacity	
All the PD       Under of RANS: 2         Setting Spare       Setting RANK         Number of Bound Spares: 1       Setting RANK         Setting LD       Standard RAIDS(4+P)         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Huge Capacity RAIDS(6+P)         Only specify LD Gapacity       DD Geneticy         Solid the number of LDs       Number of LDs         Setting LD Confirm LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding         Setting LD Confirm LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding         Setting LD Confirm LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding         Setting LD Confirm LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding         Setting LD Confirm LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding         Setting LD Confirm LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding         Setting LD Confirm LD Batch Binding       LD Batch Binding         Setting LD Type/Name       DO Copencity         Specify Lot the number of LDs       LA2,805,565,460 B         Number of Spares       100 LP	
Setting Spare Number of Spares (0-1): Standard RAIDS(4+P) High Eeliability RAID1(1+1)C Large Capacity RAIDS(6+P) Standard RAIDS(4+P) Huge Capacity RAIDS(6+P) Standard RAIDS(4+P) Huge Capacity RAIDS(6+P) Standard RAIDS(4+P) Huge Capacity RAIDS(6+P) Huge Capacity RAIDS(6+P) LD Batch Binding Confirm LD Batch Binding Dolly specify LD Capacity Specify LD Type/Name	e
Setting Spare Setting Spare Setting RANK Spares (0-1): 0 Spares (0-1): 0 Standard RAID5(4+P) C Huge Capacity RAID5(6+P) Standard RAID5(4+P) C Huge Capacity RAID5(6+P) Setting LD Here are LD setting items for each RANK. Unspecified items will be calculated automatically. Only specify the number of LDs Number of LDs (1-36) Only specify LD Capacity LD Capacity (0.1-1) Spacify both the number of LDs 142,805,565,440 B Alt Capacity 10 Croup Number : 00h Number of Spares : 0	
Spares       (0-1):       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       0       1       1       0       1 <td< td=""><td>y</td></td<>	y
Number of Bound Spares: 1          Stangard RAIDS(4F)           E Ruge Capacity RAIDS(4F)           E Ruge Capacity RAIDS(4F)        Setting LD      Here are LD setting items for each RANK.         Unspecified items will be calculated automatically.           LD Batch Binding Confirmation Scre        Confirm LD Batch Binding           LD Batch Binding Confirmation Scre        Only specify the number of LDs           LD Capacity        Specify both the number of LDs           LD Capacity        Specify LD Capacity           LA2,805,565,440        Mumber of Spares           LO	/ed
Setting LD	1
Unspecified items will be calculated automatically. Confirm LD Batch Binding Confirm LD Batch Bi	
• Only specify the number of LDs       Number of LDs       (1-36)       Confirm LD Batch Binding       Estimate of the second secon	-n
Only specify LD Capacity     LD Capacity     (0.1-1     Space, RANK and LD will be bound in this way.       Specify both the number of LDs and LD Capacity     142,805,555,440 B     PD Group Number     : 00h       Setting LD Type/Name     Number of Spares     : 0	
Specify both the number of LDs 142,805,565,440 B PD Group Number : 00h Setting LD Type/Name : 0	
Setting LD Type/Name Number of Spares : 0	
Setting LD Type/Name	
Number of Unused PDs : 1	
D type and name can be specified(It is also possible to after 1	
t the number of LDF is two or more, LD Number will be source at the RANK Type : High Reliability RAID1 (1+1	
03 Type AZ Y Name Z0000004C517635 Number of RANKs : 1	
Iotal ALANK Lapacity : 3.3.2 bs (3.5, /01, 915, 648 Byt	
OK Cancel	es)
LD Capacity : 33.2 GB (35,699,818,496 Byt	25)
Total Mumber of LDs : 1	25) 25)
Total LD Capacity : 33.2 GB (35,699,818,496 Byt	es) es)
Ownership : ControllerO	25) 25) 25)
All Louis design and the second se	25) 25) 25)
All bound Spare, RANK and LD will be maintained unbound.	25) 25) 25)
() It will take several minutes to bind LD.	es) es) es)
	25) 25) 25)
Start Batch Binding?	es) es) es)
	es) es)

Figure 8-21 Transition of LD Batch Binding Screens

### (2) Execution conditions

When batch binding logical disks for all the physical disks, all the existing settings are unset. Therefore, if any one of the following conditions is met, the batch binding cannot be executed.

- (i) Logical disks managed by the Access Control (Port mode) are present.
- (ii) Logical disks managed by the Access Control (WWN mode) are present.
- (iii) Logical disks that are set in pairs are present.

Execute the batch binding after unset the states above.

### (3) Disk relationship

When binding logical disks, it is necessary to understand the relationship between the physical disk, the RANK, and the logical disk.

Figure 8-22 shows the relationship between the physical disk, the RANK, and the logical disk.





#### (4) Complement

In the batch binding, it is executed from RANK Bind to LD Bind all at once. In this case, both the RANK and the LD are bound with the same capacity. Regarding the RANK binding, four patterns based on the combinations of the PD count and the RAID type can be specified. However, when binding through other settings, refer to 8.2 "Method of Binding Logical Disks".

The screen displayed when binding logical disks in a batch and the details are described below.



### (5) LD Batch Binding screen

The LD Batch Binding screen is shown in Figure 8-23. The displays and setting items in the screen are described below.

Physical Target Disk       RANK Information         Image: Construction of the point of the point of the following setting(auto-calculated).       Number of bound RANK according to the following setting(auto-calculated).         Image: Construction of the point of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Number of auto-calculated).         Image: Construction of the point of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Number of auto-calculated).         Image: Construction of the point of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Number of auto-calculated).         Image: Construction of the point of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Number of auto-calculated).         Image: Construction of the point of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Number of the point of the point of the following setting.         Image: Construction of the point of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Image: Construction of the point of the following setting.         Image: Construction of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Image: Construction of the point of the following setting.         Image: Construction of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Image: Construction of the following setting.         Image: Construction of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Image: Construction of the following setting.         Image: Construction of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Image: Construction of the following setting.         Image: Construction of the following setting (auto-calculated).       Im	ľ	-				
<ul> <li>O mused pp</li> <li>○ ALL the PD</li> <li>○ ALL the PD</li> <li>Setting Spare</li> <li>Number of RANKs : 1</li> <li>Setting Spare</li> <li>Number of Bound Spares: 0</li> <li>Setting RANK</li> <li>○ High Reliability RAID1(1+1) ○ Large Capacity RAID5(6+P)</li> <li>○ Standard RAID5(4+P)</li> <li>○ Higge Capacity RAID5(8+P)</li> <li>Setting LD</li> <li>Here are LD setting items for each RANK.</li> <li>Unspecified items will be calculated automatically.</li> <li>○ Only specify the number of LDs</li> <li>Number of LDs</li> <li>○ Specify both the number of LDs</li> </ul>		Physical Target Disk	RANK Information	DAW eccording to		
Setting Spare       Setting RANK         Number of       Setting RANK         Spares       (0) :         Mumber of Bound Spares:       Image RANK         Setting LD       Setting items for each RANK.         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Unspecified items will be calculated automatically.         Image Only specify the number of LDs       Number of LDs         Setting LD       Image Of LDs         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Unspecified items will be calculated automatically.         Image Only specify the number of LDs       Image Of LDs         Specify LD Capacity       LD Capacity       Image Of LDs         Specify both the number of LDs       Image Of LDs       Image Of LDs	•	• Unused <u>P</u> D C <u>A</u> ll the PD	the following setting(auto-calcul;	ated).		
Number of       Image: Capacity RAIDS (6+P)         Spares (0) :       Image: Capacity RAIDS (6+P)         Number of Bound Spares: 0       Image: Capacity RAIDS (6+P)         Setting LD       Image: Capacity RAIDS (6+P)         Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Unspecified items will be calculated automatically.         Image: Only specify the number of LDs       Number of LDs         Image: Only specify LD Capacity       Image: Capacity (0.1-83.2)         Specify both the number of LDs       Image: Capacity (0.1-83.2)	ļ	Setting Spare	Setting BANK			
Spares       (0) : []]       C         Number of Bound Spares: 0       O Standard RAID5(4+P)       O Huge Capacity RAID5(8+P)         Setting LD       Here are LD setting items for each RANK.       Unspecified items will be calculated automatically.         Image: Constraint of LDs       Number of LDs       1         Image: Constraint of LDs       Number of LDs       1         Image: Constraint of LDs       LD Capacity       0.1-33.2)       33.2         Image: Constraint of LDs       Constraint of LDs       1       1         Image: Constraint of LDs       Constraint of LDs       1       1		Number of	• High Reliability RAID1(1+1) C Le	rge Capacity RAID5(6+P)		
Setting LD Here are LD setting items for each RANK. Unspecified items will be calculated automatically. © Only specify the number of LDs Number of LDs (1-36) 1 = © Only specify LD Capacity LD Capacity (0.1-33.2) 33.2 = GB Specify both the number of LDs		Spares (0) : Carl Number of Bound Spares: 0	C Standard R&ID5(4+P) C Hy	ge Capacity RAID5(8+P)		
ond ID Conceptur 35,599,818,495 BV525		<ul> <li>Only specify the number of</li> <li>Only specify LD Capacity</li> <li>Specify both the number of</li> <li>and LD Constitut</li> </ul>	LDs Number of LDs (1-3 LD Capacity (0.1 LDs 25,699.818.496 )	6) 1		
		- Setting LD Typ <u>e</u> /Name -		. To day of day and		
Setting LD Type/Name		LD type and name can be specified(It is also possible to set after binding). If the number of LDs is two or more. ID Number will be added at the end of specified name				
D Setting LD Type/Name LD type and name can be specified(It is also possible to set after binding). If the number of LDs is two or more, LD Number will be edded at the end of specified name		If the number of LDs is two or	I MORE LU NUMPER WILL DE SAMEA SE EI	The second		

Figure 8-23 LD Batch Binding Screen

### (A) PD Group Number

The PD group of LD Batch Binding is specified here. The PD groups existing in the disk array are displayed in the pull-down list. Select one from the list.

The PD group refers to a management aggregate of PDs; therefore, it is impossible to form a configuration spanning two or more PD groups. Binding logical disks shall be set within this PD group.

### (B) Physical Target Disk

Select batch binding target physical disks.

• All the PD

Batch binds all physical disks that exist in the specified PD group. Unbinds all the spares and RANKs which have already been bound, and newly binds them.

### • Unused PD

Binds physical disks which have not configured the spare and RANK in the specified PD group. Does not unbind spares and RANKs which have already been bound.

(C) RANK Information

The number of RANKs to bind is displayed.

The number of displays is automatically calculated depending on the disk array setting state as well as the set values of spares and LDs.

### (D) Setting Spare

Specifies the number of spares. The set value up to twice as many as the DE count can be specified. However, the maximum value varies with the number of spare binding target physical disks. For example, if the DE count is 2, the specifiable range is 0 to 4 and the initial value is 2. Since there are up to 8 spares per PD group, the upper limit of the set value is 8 when the DE count is 4 or more.

.....

### DEs are physical components of the disk array on which physical disks are mounted.

Up to two spares can be created for a disk enclosure (DE).

When binding unused physical disks, the maximum value varies with the number of spares that have already been bound.

#### (E) Setting RANK

Specifies the RAID type of the RANK to bind. This setup and the PD capacity determine the RANK capacity.

• High Reliability RAID1 (1+1):	Consisting of two PDs, the RANK capacity is equivalent to that of about one PD.
• Standard RAID5 (4+P):	Consisting of five PDs, the RANK capacity is equivalent to that of about four PDs.
• Large Capacity RAID5 (6+P):	Consisting of seven PDs, the RANK capacity is the same as that of about six PDs.
• Huge Capacity RAID5 (8+P):	Consisting of nine PDs, the RANK capacity is the same as that of about eight PDs.

Initial setting is set as "Standard RAID5 (4+P)".

### (F) Setting LD

Specifies the number of LDs to bind or their capacity (or both).

· Only specify the number of LDs

The maximum capacity that can be created is automatically calculated for the individual LD Capacity. Since, in this case, the number of LDs to bind in a RANK is specified, the number of actually bound LDs is the specified value multiplied by the RANK count.

· Only specify LD capacity

The maximum number that can be created is automatically calculated for the number of LDs to be bound in the RANK. Information such as the number of LDs that are finally bound and their capacity can be checked with 8.2.4 (6) "Confirm LD Batch Binding screen" after clicking the [OK] button.

· Specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity

Any value can be set to the number of logical disks/capacity. The acceptability of the set value is verified after the [OK] button is clicked. If the set value is in error, an error message is output.

The capacity which is entered into the input field can be used by the user. However, depending on the input value and the RAID configuration, a capacity exceeding this value may be obtained. The reason is that, since the minimum unit that can be bound in the case of RAID5(n+P) is 128KBxn, disks are bound in terms of rounded-up MBs if the resulting figure cannot be divided. As the area for use in the RANK, there is not only the capacity for use by the user but also the disk management area.

2. The maximum number of LDs which can be bound in the same RANK is 36.

#### (G) Setting LD Type/Name

For the LDs to bind, it is possible to set their formats and names simultaneously with their binding. The LD name needs to be unique in the system (no two names must not be the same). Therefore, when binding multiple LDs, the LD names in which the sequential numbers are added to the specified character strings are automatically given.

The value initially displayed in the LD name input field is 20 characters which result from adding 4 characters of the logical disk number to 16 characters inherent to the disk array. When the logical disk name is not changed, the above-mentioned initial value is set.

When the LD type is not changed, the LD Type is made blank.

Example: 020020000004C518CAC0000, 20000004C518CAC0001, ...

Moreover, when the LD Type is made blank, the value set before shipment is initially displayed. The LD Type is made blank, and "16 characters inherent to the disk array + 4 characters of the logical disk number" is set for

the LD name.

A list of selectable LD Type is shown in Table 8-2.

The LD Type and LD name can be changed later on the main screen of the iSM client or in 7.2.4 "Renaming a Logical Disk".

	Table 8-2List of LD Type	
LD Type	Description	
A2	Operating LDs by the ACOS-2 system	
A4	Operating LDs by the ACOS-4 system (If you are setting this type, ask our maintenance personnel.)	
AX	Operating LDs by the AIX system	
CX	Operating LDs by the Solaris system	
LX	Operating LDs by the Linux system	
NX	Operating LDs by the HP-UX system	
WN	Operating LDs by the Windows system	

 NX
 Operating LDs by the HP-UX system

 WN
 Operating LDs by the Windows system

 Image: NX
 Operating LDs by the following regulations cannot be set.

 Image: NX
 Operating LDs by the following regulations cannot be set.

 Image: NX
 Image: NX

 Image: NX
 Ima

	• Available characters: Alphabet: A to Z (a to Z)					
	* Upper- and lower-case characters are distinguished.					
	Numerals: 0 to 9					
	Underbar: -					
	Slash: /					
	* All the characters must be 1-byte characters.					
2.	If this set value is in error, the same LD name as when this setting is omitted is given.					
3.	On the ACOS-4 system, make sure that the LD name matches the LD identifier name on the host.					

.....



Ξ.

For information on the "A4" format, refer to Appendix G "ACOS-4 Resource Operation Guard".



### (6) Confirm LD Batch Binding screen

Click the [OK] button after entering the required parameters into the LD Batch Bind screen described in (5) to display the confirmation screen shown in Figure 8-24.

If there are no problems with the setting information on batch binding, click [Yes]. The RANK and LD binding will start.

	Confirm LD Batch Binding		×		
	Spare, RANK and LD will be	bound in this way.			
ſ	PD Group Number	: 00h			
(A) {	Number of Spares	: 0			
	Number of Unused PDs	: 0			
ſ	RANK Type	: High Reliability RAID1 (1+1)			
	Number of RANKs	: 1			
(B) Ҳ	Total RANK Capacity	: 33.2 GB (35,701,915,648 Bytes)			
l	Total Unused RANK Capacity	: 0.0 MB (0 Bytes)			
ſ	LD Capacity	: 33.2 GB (35,699,818,496 Bytes)			
(C) {	Total Number of LDs	: 1			
L	Total LD Capacity	: 33.2 GB (35,699,818,496 Bytes)			
(D)	Ownership	: ControllerO			
	All bound Spare, RANK and LD will be maintained unbound.				
	It will take several minutes to bind LD.				
	Start Batch Binding?				
	<u>Y</u> es	<u>N</u> o			

Figure 8-24 Confirm LD Batch Binding Screen

### (A) Information About PD

- PD Group Number: PD group number to bind
- Number of Spares: (total) Number of spares to bind
- Number of Unused PDs: Number of PDs unused for binding

For batch binding, the number of PDs for RANK Bind is any of 2, 5, 7, and 9. Therefore, depending on specifying the physical configuration and "Setting RANK", "Unused PD" may be present.

Example: In the event of a single DE with 15 PDs in the DE, these values are as shown in the table below.

RAN	IK Setting	Number of Spares	Number of Created RANKs	Number of Unused PDs
High Reliabi	lity RAID1 (1+1)	1	7	0
Standard	RAID5 (4+P)	1	2	4
Standard	RAID5 (4+P)	2	2	3

Table 8-3 Number of Unused PDs

### (B) Information About RANK

	• RANK Type:	RAID type and the number of PDs which		which bind the RANK	
		High reliability	RAID1 (1+1):	Mirroring configuration based on two PDs	
		Standard	RAID5 (4+P):	Striping configuration based on five PDs	
		Large capacity	RAID5 (6+P):	Striping configuration based on seven PDs	
		Huge capacity	RAID5 (8+P):	Striping configuration based on nine PDs	
• Number of RANKs: Number of RANKs to bin		Ks to bind			
	• Total RANK Capacity:	Total capacity of	f RANKs to bind		
Total Unused RANK Capacity:		apacity: Capa	Capacity of the free space for LD Binding in the RANK to bind. If the LI		
		Capa	acity is automatica	Ily calculated, it is basically 0 here.	

### (C) Information About LD

LD Capacity:	Capacity of a single LD to bind
• Total Number of LDs:	Total number of LDs to bind
	Not the number of LDs per RANK but the total number of LDs to bind
Total LD Capacity:	Total capacity of all the LDs to bind
	LD Capacity $\times$ Total Number of LDs = Total LD Capacity

### (D) Information About LD Ownership

li

The ownership of the LDs to bind is displayed. Fixed to controller 0.

The Ownership is valid only when Cross Call is OFF. To set the LD Ownership to controller 1 when Cross Call is ON, use "Change Ownership" after binding or specify the controller on "Individual Bind of LD" and perform binding.

.....

### (7) Result screen

When LD Batch Binding is completed successfully, a message box as shown below appears.



Figure 8-25 Success Message Box

"Bind" here means that LD binding started successfully. Check the LD state for information by using the main screen of the iSM client to see if the actual binding is completed or not.

Immediately after the binding is started, "Attn.(formatting)" appears as shown in Figure 8-26.





When LD Batch Binding fails, a message box appears as shown below.

Figure 8-27 Failure Message Box

Possible causes of an LD batch binding failure may be a communication error between the iSM server and the iSM client, a problem in the disk array, and so forth. When there is a communication error, the binding instruction may have been correct; therefore, reconnect the iSM client and check the state. If the disk array is in error, the failure factor is recorded in the application log of the iSM server. In this case, take appropriate measures while referring to the application log of the iSM server and then re-execute the binding.



.....

# 8.3 Binding a Spare

To bind spares, refer to the following descriptions.

Spare Bind (8.3.1)

Spare Unbind (8.3.2)

Spare Rebuilding Mode (8.3.3)

Disk Arr	ay Name : S2300/0434		PD <u>G</u> roup	Number 00 🔻 h
D (Leg	end : RANK/Spare : Unused)		RANK (Number	of Resources: 7)
00 00 01	02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 0a 0b 0c 0d 0e	RANK Bind	00 00 01	-
			01 02	
		RANK	02 03	
	RANK <u>B</u> ind	Unbind	03 04	
	Capacity Expansion		04 05 06 07	
	Spare Bind	Expansion	05 09 0a 0b 00	ः ०व
	Spare Unbind		l na na	<u>د</u>
	Rebuild Start Instruction Change Rebuild Ime	Spare B <u>i</u> nd	Change <u>R</u> ebuild Time	Rebuild <u>S</u> tart Instruction
	Unsele <u>c</u> t	Spare	Spare (Number	of Resources: 0
	P <u>r</u> operties	Unbind		

Figure 8-28 RANK/Spare Tab Screen Menu and Buttons

# 8.3.1 Spare Bind

On the RANK/Spare Tab screen (Figure 8-28), spare can be bound/unbound by using the popup menu (right-click) or the buttons on the screen after selecting PDs and RANKs, etc.

Selecting only a single unused PD enables this button, thus making it possible to bind a spare.



Figure 8-29 Spare Bind

Click the [Spare Bind] button to display a message as follows.



Figure 8-30 Spare Bind Confirmation

Select [Yes] to bind a spare.



Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.



Figure 8-31 Spare Unbind

Click the [Spare Unbind] button to display a message as shown below.

iSM	×	
⚠	[05215] Following Spare will be unbound.	
	PD Number:00h-0eh	
	Is it ok?	
	Yes No	

Figure 8-32 Spare Unbind Confirmation

Select [Yes] to unbind the spare.

# 8.3.3 Spare Rebuilding Mode

### (1) Special screen

The screen shown below (Configuration setting menu  $\rightarrow$  Setting Disk Array  $\rightarrow$  Special) can be used to set the spare rebuilding mode.

You can also make various settings by activating each checkbox (such as Cross Call, Spare, and Expand LUN) to enable them and then clicking the [Apply] button at lower right. Moreover, immediately after the screen has been displayed or after the setting has been made, current settings for the disk array are activated through radio buttons.

For S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array, refer to Figure 8-34.

	Nickname Platform Network License Special
r	Cross Call
	⊙ ON ○ O <u>F</u> F Set Cross Call
	Lato Assignment
۱.	$\bigcirc$ ON( $\underline{U}$ ) Use alternate path when error occurs.
	$\bigodot$ OFF (U) — Do not use alternate path when error occurs.
U	
Į	C Auto Repair ( Manually Repair Mode for repairing Spare
L	Expand LUN
ſ	Port Number 000-000 V Mode for expanding the number of LDs
$\left\{ \right.$	for selected port
l	○ ON( <u>E</u> nable) (• OFF( <u>D</u> 1sable)
r	Channe Time Disk Array Subsystem 2004/07/27 15-45-20
{	Lhange lime 2004/07/27 13.46.30
	Date&Time
ر د	DatedTime
ι {	DatedTime Get Log Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log.
( {	DatedTime Get Log Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log.
( {	DatedTime Get Log Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log. 
( {	DatedTime Get Log Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log. 
( {	Get Log     Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log.

Figure 8-33 Special Screen

	Setting Disk Array	:
	Nickname Platform Network License Special	
(D) {	Change Time Disk Array Subsystem date and time can be changed. Change Time Present Date&Time : 2004/07/27 09:26:34	
(E) {	Get Log Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log. Get <u>L</u> og	
	Get Disk Array Info. Close Help	

Figure 8-34 Special Screen (S400/S1400/S2400/S2800)

### (A) Cross Call

Refer to 8.5.1 "Cross Call and Auto Assignment".

#### (B) Spare

Can set the data rebuild operation when one of the physical disks configuring logical disks fails.

- Auto Repair: The repair operation is automatically started when unused spare disks exist.
- Manually Repair: Placed in the rebuild wait state without automatically performing repair operations.

When placed in the rebuild wait state, the repair start instruction can be given on the RANK/Spare Screen.

### (C) Expand LUN

### Refer to 0 "

Expand LUN".

(D) Change Time

Refer to 9.5 "Setting Disk Array Time".

(E) Get Log Refer to 9.6 "Getting Log in the Disk Array".



### IV-137

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

# 8.4 Setting the Port

# 8.4.1 Expand LUN

When connecting to HP-UX, it is possible to expand the number of logical disks which can be detected from the OS in terms of each port.

Select the Port Number from the pull-down menu on the Special screen in Figure 8-33 and then select ON or OFF from the radio button located below to be able to set them by clicking the [Apply] button at lower right. The Port Number is represented in terms of the "directory number - port number".

.....

.....

⚠

As a result of changing this setting, the disk array may stop being accessible from OS. Careful attention needs to be directed in changing the setting. For details, refer to the disk array user's manual.



...

# 8.5 Special Settings

To make special settings, refer to the following descriptions.

Cross Call and Auto Assignment (8.5.1)

Ownership (8.5.2)

🚰 Setting Disk Array 🔀
Nickname Platform Network License Special
Cross Call
© ON C OFF Set Cross Call
Luto Assignment
$\bigcirc$ ON(U) Use alternate path when error occurs.
$\bigodot$ OFF $(\underline{U})$ . Do not use alternate path when error occurs.
O Auto Repair ( Manually Densir Mode for renairing Spare
Mode for expanding the number of LDs
Port Number 00h-00h for selected port
○ ON( <u>E</u> nable)
Disk Arrav Subsystem
<u>Change Time</u> DateGTime 2004/07/27 15:46:30
Get Log Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log.
Apply
Get Disk Array Info. Close Help

Figure 8-35 When Selecting the [Special] Tab on the Setting Disk Array Screen

# 8.5.1 Cross Call and Auto Assignment

Can set Cross Call function ON/OFF.

Cross Call ON state

This can be set when two controllers exist. In this state, all the logical disks can be accessed from the two controllers. The Auto Assignment function is disabled.

Cross Call OFF state

Refers to the disk array's initial state. The logical disk can be accessed only from the controller which has the Ownership.

In this case, it becomes possible to set the Auto Assignment function.

Auto Assignment function

Enabled when two controllers are available. The purpose of this function is automatically switching to the access to another controller when the primary controller goes down.

Б.

When the Cross Call is set to OFF, there may exist logical disks which can no longer be accessible from OS, according to the Ownership and the connected controller. In this case, please change the Ownership.



### 8.5.2 Ownership

On the LD Individual Bind/Unbind screen (Figure 8-14), LD binding/unbinding can be performed. The operation can be performed by using the popup menu (right-click) or the buttons on the screen after selecting a logical disk or free space of RANK.

Changes the LD Ownership.

When a logical disk exists in the selected PD group, clicking this button displays the dialog shown in the figure below, making it possible to change the ownership.

When selecting multiple logical disks, perform operation as described below.

Select continuous logical disks:

Select the first and the last logical disks while holding down the Shift key.

. . .

Select an Individual logical disk:

Select a logical disk while holding down the Ctrl key.

Change Ownership 🛛 🔀						
		- 15				
	<u>A</u> II th	ецр				
N	umber	Туре	LD Name	Ownership		
00	)00h		20000004C5176350000	Controller0		
00	01h		200000004C5176350001	Controller0		
00	)02h		20000004C5176350002	Controller0		
00	003h		20000004C5176350003	Controller0		
00	07h		20000004C5176350007	Controller0		
00	08h		20000004C5176350008	Controller0		
00	09h		200000004C5176350009	Controller0		
00	)0ah		200000004C517635000A	Controller0		
00	)0bh		200000004C517635000B	Controller0		
00	)Och		200000004C517635000C	Controller0		
00	)0dh		200000004C517635000D	Controller0		
	ross Ca	all Setting St	ates			
	_					
	Cross	Call : ON				
$-S_1$	pecify	Ownership —				
-						
1	Cont	roller( <u>0</u> ) [	Controller( <u>1</u> )			
	App Ly Close					

Figure 8-36 Change Ownership Dialog

### IV-141

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.



# 8.6 Explanation of Configuration Setting Screen

Bind or unbind LDs or RANKs individually in accordance with the following procedure.

On S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array, refer to 7.4 "Explanation of Configuration Setting Screen".

- (1) Click "LD Bind/Unbind" from the "Configuration- [Setting Mode]" screen.
- (2) RANK Binding or settings related to Spare disks are performed by selecting "RANK/Spare" with a tab (refer to 8.6.1 "RANK/Spare Screen" for details).
- (3) Settings for LD bind/unbind are performed by selecting "LD" with a tab (refer to 8.6.2 "Logical Disk Screen" for details).

⚠

When binding logical disks having the same capacity as an already bound logical disk for such a purpose as replication, refer to Appendix D "Notes on Use for Data Replication".



# 8.6.1 RANK/Spare Screen

### (1) Description

The RANK/Spare screen, which is shown in Figure 8-37, describes the content based on its encircled numbers. Refer to (2) "Operation" to know how to operate the screen.



Figure 8-37 RANK/Spare Screen

### (A) PD Group Number

The PD group for performing the RANK/Spare Bind/Unbind is specified here. The PD groups existing in the disk array are displayed in the pull-down list; select one from among them.

The PD group refers to a management aggregate of PDs; therefore, it is impossible to form a configuration spanning two or more PD groups. RANK/Spare Bind/Unbind shall be set within this PD group.



### (B) PD window

PDs existing in the selected PD group are displayed in terms of each DE. For details of the display, refer to the diagram below.



Figure 8-38 PD Window

(C) RANK window

RANKs bound within the PD group are displayed.

For details of the display, refer to the diagram below.



Figure 8-39 RANK Window

(D) Spare window

Spare disks bound within the selected PD group are displayed. For details of the display, refer to the diagram below.



Figure 8-40 Spare Window

(E) Shape of selected button

PDs and RANKs are displayed with button shapes. Select/Deselect are performed by clicking the relevant buttons. The selected state has the concave shape, whereas the deselected state is the convex shape. These are alternated by clicking the left button of the mouse. Clicking again on what is already selected will change it to Deselect (or vice versa).

The states of RANKs and unused PDs are as follows.

\* Select an unused PD when a RANK is already selected. → Both the RANK and the unused PD are placed in the selected state.

PD (Legend : RANK/Spare : Unused)	RANK (Number of Resources: 2)
00 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 05 0a 0b 0c 0d 0e	RANK Bind 00 00 01 02 03 04
	01 05 06 07 08 09
	-
PD (Legend : RANK/Spare : Unused)	RANK (Number of Resources: 2)
00 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 05 0a 0b 0c 0d 0e	RANK Bind 00 00 01 02 03 04
	01 05 06 07 08 09

Figure 8-41 RANKs and Unused PDs

\* Select another unused PD when an unused PD is already selected. → Multiple unused PDs are placed in the selected state.



Figure 8-42 Multiple Unused PDs



### (2) Operation

In this dialog, RANK Bind/unbind can be performed by using the popup menu of the right button or the buttons on the screen after selecting PDs and RANKs, etc. The encircled alphabets on the screen are described.



Figure 8-43 RANK/Spare Tab Screen Menu and Buttons

(A) Unselect

Deselects the selected RANKs, unused PDs or Spares.

(B) Properties

The properties of selected RANKs, unused PDs and Spares are displayed as shown below.

RANK Properties COD-OOD RAID Type : RA RANK Capacity : 13 14 LD Bind : Bo	ID5 (4+P) 3.1 GB 2,971,764,736 Bytes und
PD Properties	PD Properties
00h-0bh PD Capacity : 33.2 GB 35,742,810,112 Bytes Classification : Not Set	DOD-Oeh PD Capacity : 33.2 GB 35,742,810,112 Bytes Classification : Spare
Close	Close

Figure 8-44 RANK/PD/Spare Properties

### (C) [Get Disk Array Info.]

This button is used to read the current values which are set in the disk array. In the event of communication errors or some changes in the disk array, this button can be used to update the information.

# 8.6.2 Logical Disk Screen

### (1) Description

The LD screen is shown in Figure 8-45. The encircled alphabets in the screen are described below. To know how to manipulate the screen, refer to (2) "Operation".

LD Individual Bind/Unbind	1
RANK/Spare LD	
Select Disk Array Name : Storage4100 PD <u>G</u> roup Number <b>DD</b> h	(A)
LD (Legend :Bound :Free Space) (Number of Resources: 21)	
RANK 00h         0000h         0001h         0002h         0003h         0004h         0005h         0006h           33.2 GB         2000000.	
RANK 01h         0000h         0001h         0007h         0008h         0009h         000ah         000bh           33.2 GB         200000         20000	(B)
PD:02h,03h RANK 02h 000ch 000eh 000fh 0010h 0011h 0012h 33.2 GB 200000200000200000200000200000200000 RAID1 (1+1) 4.7 GB 4.7 GB 4.7 GB 4.7 GB 4.7 GB 4.7 GB	
PD:04h,05h	
LD Unbind LD Bind Change Qwnership Change Format Time	
Get Disk Array Info. Close <u>H</u> elp	

Figure 8-45 LD Screen

### (A) PD Group Number

The PD group for performing the LD bind/unbind is specified here. The PD groups existing in the disk array are displayed in the pull-down list; select one from among them.

The PD group refers to a management aggregate of PDs; therefore, it is impossible to form a configuration spanning two or more PD groups. LD bind/unbind shall be set within this PD group.



(B) LD window

RANKs existing in the selected PD group and the LDs bound in the RANK are displayed. For details of the display, refer to the diagram below.





Selecting a logical disk and then displaying the properties will result in outputting the detailed information. For details of the display, refer to (A) "Properties" of (2) "Operation".
#### (2) Operation

In this dialog, LD binding/unbinding can be performed. The operation can be performed by using the popup menu (right-click) or the buttons on the screen after selecting a logical disk or free space of RANK. The encircled alphabets in the screen are described below.

RANK/Spare       LD         Select       Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258       PD Group Number       D h         LD       (Legend :Bound :Free Space)       (Number of Resources: 120)         RANK 00h	X		l/Unbind	LD Individual Bind/Un
Select         Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258         PD Group Number         D0 (Legend :Bound :Free Space)         (Number of Resources: 120)         RAINK 00h          99.8 CB          RAIDS (3+P)          PD: 00h, 01h, 02h, 03h         RAIDS (3+P)          PD: 00h, 01h, 02h, 03h         RAIDS (3+P)         PD: 00h, 01h, 02h, 03h         RAIDS (3+P)         PD: 00h, 01h, 02h, 03h         RAIDS (3+P)         PD: 00h, 01h, 02h, 03h         RAIDS (3+P)         PD: 00h, 05h, 06h, 07h         RAIDS (3+P)         PD: 04h, 05h, 06h, 07h         RAIDS (2+P)         S         PD: 08h, 09h, 0ah         Change Qwnership         Change			]	RANK/Spare LD
Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258       PD Group Number       Disk Array Name : Storage2100/1258         LD (Legend :Bound :Free Space)       (Number of Resources: 120)         RAINK 00h				Select
LD (Legend :: Bound :: Free Space)       (Number of Resources: 120)         RANK 00h	r 00 T h	PD <u>G</u> roup Numbe	me : Storage2100/1258	Disk Array Name :
RANK 00h       0	ources: 120)	(Number of Res	:Bound :Free Space)	LD (Legend:B)
RANK 01h			0         0 <t< td=""><td>RANK 00h 0 99.8 GB 5 RAID5 (3+P) 5 PD</td></t<>	RANK 00h 0 99.8 GB 5 RAID5 (3+P) 5 PD
RANK 02h       0	σ 8	1h 00eeh 00efh ED gp00EE gp00EF CB15.8 CB15.8 CB		RANK 01h 99.8 GB RAID5 (3+P) PD
ID Unbind       ID Bind       Change Qwnership       Change Format Time         Get Disk Array Info.       Close       Help	used		0000000. RR.R.R.R.R.R.R.R.R.R. 55.5.5.5.5.5.5.5.5.5.	RANK 02h 0. 66.5 GB R. RAID5 (2+P) 5.
DD Unbind DD Bind Change Qumership Change Ko Properties Get Disk Array Info. Close Help	Change <u>O</u> wnership Change <u>F</u> ormat Time	1 k 1111111111111111111		
Get Disk Array Info. Close Help	Properties	ge <u>O</u> wnership Change <u>F</u> o	LD <u>B</u> ind Chan	LD Unbind
	Help	· /	y Info. Close	Get Disk Array I
				<b></b>
l (B) Popup Menu	inu	Popup Me		 (B)

Figure 8-47 LD Individual Bind/Unbind



(A) Properties

Select a logical disk to display its properties. A dialog box as shown below will appear.

LD Properties			×
NX_Ser	ver		
LD Number	:	0000h	
OS Type	:	NX	
LD Capacity	:	33.2 GB	
		35,740,712,960 Bytes	_
PD Group Numbe	r:	00h	
RANK Number	:	00h	
RAID Type	:	RAID1 (1+1)	
		Close	

Figure 8-48 LD Properties

#### (B) [Get Disk Array Info.]

This button is used to read the current values which are set in the disk array. In the event of communication errors or some changes in the disk array, this button can be used to update the information.



# Chapter 9 Configuration Setting (Common to All Units)

This chapter describes configuration settings common to all units.

# 9.1 Nickname Setting

In this section, nicknames are given and settings affecting the entire disk array, etc. Can be performed with regard to the disk array.

The Nickname screen appears by clicking the [Setting Disk Array] button of the "Configuration - [Setting Mode]" screen. (The disk array name, port name, and logical disk name can also be changed on the main screen of the iSM client though this section describes the method using the configuration setting screen. For the method using the main screen, refer to the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)".)

The screen contains five tabs, [Nickname], [Platform], [Network], [License], and [Special]. This section describes usage of the [Nickname] tab.

Note that some tabs may not be displayed because the support function varies depending on the disk array series. For information on differences in supported functions between the disk array series products, refer to 6.1 "Parameters".



### 9.1.1 Setting a Disk Array Name

#### (1) Nickname screen

The screen below (Configuration setting menu  $\rightarrow$  Setting Disk Array  $\rightarrow$  Nickname) can change the disk array name and the port name.

Setting Disk Array	×	]
ickname   Platform   Networ	k License Special	
Disk Array Subsyst	em Information	h
Product ID	: Storage S2800	
Serial Number	: 0000000929300021	
-Setting Disk Array	Name	
Disk Array Name	: \$2800/0021	
New <u>D</u> isk Array Nam	ie : Apply	
Satting Dort Name-		IJ
Deut Nuchen		l)
Port Number	. 00h-00h	
Port Name	PORT_TEST_002	
N <u>e</u> w Port Name	: Apply	
		1
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> f	o. <u>H</u> elp	1

Figure 9-1 Nickname Screen

(A) Disk Array Subsystem Information

Product ID:The disk array's product ID is displayed.Serial Number:The disk array serial number is displayed.

(B) Setting Disk Array Name

Disk Array Name:The current disk array name is displayed.New Disk Array Name:Refers to the field for entering the disk array name to change.

(C) Setting Port Name

Refer to 9.1.2 "Setting a Port Name".



Enter a new name into the [New Disk Array Name] and then click the [Apply] button to output a message as shown below to change the disk array name.



Figure 9-2 Setting Disk Array Name Success Screen

⚠		
Unless the disk array name ar	nd the port name t	o enter abide by the rules below, settings cannot be made.
Number of available charac	eters: 1 to 32 char	acters
Available characters:	Alphabet:	A to Z (a to z)
		* Upper- and lower-case characters are distinguished.
	Numerals:	0 to 9
	Underbar:	_
	Slash:	/
* All the characters must be	e 1-byte character	S.



### 9.1.2 Setting a Port Name

#### (1) Nickname screen

The Nickname screen, which is as shown below, can change the disk array name and the port name.

Setting Disk Array	
Nickname Platform Network License Special	
Disk Array Subsystem Information	J
Product ID : Storage S2800	$\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{A})$
Serial Number : 0000000929300021	
Setting Disk Array Name	) \
Disk Array Name : S2800/0021	
New Disk Array Name :	} (B)
Setting Port Name	) >
Port Number : 00h-00h	
Port Name : PORT_TEST_002	> (C)
New Port Name : Apply	J
	-
Get Disk Array Info. Elose Help	

Figure 9-3 Nickname Screen

- (A) Disk Array Subsystem Information Refer to 9.1.1 "Setting a Disk Array Name".
- (B) Setting Disk Array Name Refer to 9.1.1 "Setting a Disk Array Name".
- (C) Setting Port Name

Port Number:	The port existing in the disk array is output to the pull-down menu. Only the port for the						
	host can have a name specified. The port number list shows only the port number of the						
port for the host subordinate to Host Director.							
	The displayed format is the "director number - port number (port name)".						
Port Name	Displays the current port name of the port selected for "Port Number".						
New Port Name	Refers to the field for entering the port name to change.						



Enter a new name and then click the [Apply] button with regard to the port selected from the Port Number to output a message as shown below to change the port name.



Figure 9-4 Setting Port Name Success Screen

⚠		
Unless the disk array name an	d the port name t	o enter abide by the rules below, settings cannot be made.
Number of available charac	ters: 1 to 32 char	acters
Available characters:	Alphabet:	A to Z (a to z)
		* Upper- and lower-case characters are distinguished.
	Numerals:	0 to 9
	Underbar:	_
	Slash:	/
* All the characters must be	1-byte character	S.

### 9.1.3 Renaming a Pool

The pool can be renamed on the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen. Refer to 7.1.4 "Renaming a Pool".

### 9.1.4 Renaming a Logical Disk

The logical disk can be renamed on the "LD Individual Bind/Unbind" screen. Refer to 7.2.4 "Renaming a Logical Disk".

. . .

### 9.1.5 Nickname Batch Setting

Nickname Batch Setting refers to name batch setting (disk array name, port name, LD type/name) based on the definition file.

#### (1) Execution procedure

Perform the name batch setting (disk array name, port name, LD type/name) based on the definition file in accordance with the following procedure.

- (A) Click the [Setting Nickname] button from the "Configuration- [Setting Mode]" to display the Nickname Batch Setting dialog.
- (B) When making settings based on the user definition file, select [Read from text file] and then select any file from the dialog that opens up to read files. For information on formatting the user definition file for batch setting, refer to (a) "Formatting the user definition file". The settings can be made without reading the user definition file, by entering them directly in the edit box. In that case, enter the settings in accordance with the file format description example. Note that each line of such a description must begin with a ",".
- (C) After file reading, the data that has been read appears in the edit box. Modification, if necessary, can be made on this screen.

The format which appears in the edit box comes with "," at the head of the file records that are read. Make sure to keep this because it is used as the state area for storing individual set results to be described later.

(D) If the check box for [Execute From Cursor Line] is activated, execute the setting from the cursor line in the edit box.

Nickname Batch Setting is executed from the key information of the disk array which comes after the cursor line. The lines above the key information of the disk array cannot identify the disk array and are therefore not executed.

- (E) After content verification, click [Set disk array].
- (F) Individual set results (see below) are displayed in the state area. If in error, take measures appropriate to the displayed content.

success:	Execution results are normal.
success (already):	Execution results are normal (Already set to the same name)
failure (invalid):	Parameter error
failure (i/o error):	Access error
failure (same name):	The same name exists.
failure (RPL pair):	Format change of LDs for which replication pairs are set



failure (busy):	Executing other processing
failure (communication):	Communication error
failure (protected):	ACOS-4 resource protection error
failure (SDV):	Format setting of a snapshot data volume
failure (BV/SV/LV):	Format change of BV, SV, or LV
failure (RPL Port):	Setting of the replication port
failure (nnh):	Other error(s) (nn: Internal error code)

# Q

If "failure (communication)" or "failure (nnh)" is displayed in the batch setting process, error may have been detected after I/O to/from the disk array is ended. Check the iSM client's main screen to see if settings have been made for the disk array or not.



- For information on the ACOS-4 resource protection error, refer to Appendix G "ACOS-4 Resource Operation Guard".
- (2) SDV, BV, SV, and LV are volumes used for snapshots. For information about these volumes, refer to the "Snapshot User's Manual (Function Guide)" (IS030).
  - (G) By clicking the [Extract Error Line] button after completing the process, only the settings in error are extracted in the edit box.
  - (H) In the event of saving the definition file, select [Save As] from the dialog and then save it by specifying any file name from the save dialog.Output to a file can be made except the state area at the head of the record



📅 Nickname Batch Setting			×
Read from <u>t</u> ext file			
		A	
			Extract <u>E</u> rror Line
			Save <u>A</u> s
Id		T	
<u>S</u> et Disk Array Subsystem	Close	Help	
_ Execute From <u>C</u> ursor Line			

Figure 9-5 Nickname Batch Setting Dialog



. .

### 9.2 Platform

The screen shown below (Configuration setting menu  $\rightarrow$  Setting Disk Array  $\rightarrow$  Platform) can be used to change the platform settings of the port.

Setting Disk Array								
Nickname Platform Network License Special								
☐ <u>A</u> ll the Port								
Port Number $\triangle$	Port Name	Platform	Mode	Setting States				
00h-00h 00h-01h 01h-00h 01h-01h	PORT_TEST_0021 0244/Port/00_01 0244/Port/01_00 0244/Port/01_01	DF WN WN DF	WUN WUN WUN	Cross Call : ON Access : ON Control Specify Platform Platform				
Get Disk Array	Info. (	Close	]	Help				

Figure 9-6 Setting Disk Array Dialog Box (With [Platform] Tab)

#### (1) Platform screen

The "Platform" pull-down menu displays a list of platforms that can be set for the disk array.

If a platform, which cannot be set for the target disk array, is specified, the system displays the following message and prompts you to enter a registered platform.



Figure 9-7 Message for Specification of Unsupported Platform

The initial value of the "Platform" pull-down menu is blank. If the [Apply] button is clicked in blank state, the system displays the following message and prompts you to specify a platform.



Figure 9-8 Message for No Specification of Platform

Up to two characters can be entered for the "Platform" pull-down menu.



### 9.3 Network

The screen shown below (Configuration setting menu  $\rightarrow$  Setting Disk Array  $\rightarrow$  Network) can be used to make various network settings

🕅 Setting Disk Array 🗙 🗙	
Nickname Platform Network License Special	
Choose the service processor number to set up. Service processor number h Copy the network setup information of the service processor. <u>Copy</u>	(4)
Set up Disk Array TCP/IP Information	1
Set up IP Address of the Disk Array. Changing IP Address used for current control path will rewrite configuration file of iSM server automatically.	
IP Address : 172.20.11.00	(1)
<u>Subnet Mask</u> : 255.255.128	
<u>Gateway Address</u> : 172 . 28 . 11 .126	J
Set up SCSI Socket	1
Set up SCSI Socket Set up SCSI Socket guard of the Disk Array.	(2)
Set up SNMP	ł
Set up SNMP Set up SNMP information of the Disk Array.	(3)
After applying a setup of a [Network] tab, it is reflected to a Disk Array.	ĺ
Get Disk Array Info. Close Help	

Figure 9-9 Setting Disk Array Dialog Box ([Network] Tab)

The warning dialog box in Figure 9-10 appears when the [Apply] button is clicked after the current IP Address is changed.



Figure 9-10 Warning Dialog Box

The setting change confirmation dialog box in Figure 9-11 appears when the [Apply] button is clicked without the current IP Address being changed in the dialog box in Figure 9-9 or when the [OK] button is clicked in the warning

dialog box in Figure 9-10.

iSM	
⚠	[25231] A network setup of a Disk Array is performed. When a setup is failure, it may become impossible to recognize a Disk Array.
	May I perform?
	Yes No



Be careful that if the network setting of a disk array is changed incorrectly, the disk array becomes invisible from iSM. After making a change of an IP address unused for a control path, you need to modify (re-set) the settings according to the change by using Environment Settings on the iSM server.
--

(1) Set up Disk Array TCP/IP Information

Specify the IP (Internet Protocol) of the disk array. The current value is displayed before the IP Address is changed.

(2) Set up SCSI Socket

Specify the iSM server that monitors the target disk array through the Ether path.

Set up SCSI Socket	×
Set up SCSI Socket guard of the Disk Array.	
Accept SCSI Socket packets from any IP Address	
$\frown$ O Accept SCSI Socket packets <u>f</u> rom these IP Address	
Add Edit Delete	
OK Cancel	

Figure 9-12 Set up SCSI Socket Screen

### IV-164

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

- Accept SCSI Socket packets from any IP Address
   The target disk array can be monitored by any of the iSM servers connected on the network on which the disk array is connected.
- · Accept SCSI Socket packets from these IP Address

The target disk array can be monitored by only the IP-address-registered one of the iSM servers connected on the network on which the disk array is connected.

To specify the IP Address of an iSM server, click the [Add] button. The Add IP Address screen in Figure 9-13 appears.

IP Address Addition				×
<u>I</u> P Address :	192	. 168 .	0.1	-
OK		Cane	el	

Figure 9-13 IP Address Addition Screen

To edit an IP Address, select the IP Address of an added iSM server from the list on the "Set up SCSI Socket Screen", and click the [Edit] button. The Edit IP Address screen in Figure 9-14 appears.

IP Address Edit						×
<u>I</u> P Address	:	192	. 168	. 0	0	
	OK			Cancel		

Figure 9-14 IP Address Edit Screen

To delete an IP Address, select the IP Address of an added iSM server from the list on the "Set up SCSI Socket Screen", and click the [Delete] button.

(3) Set up SNMP

Set the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) information of the disk array.

Set up SNMP	×
Set up SNMP information of the Dis	sk Array.
<u>Community Name</u> : public	T <u>r</u> ap Information
Trap Transmission Place	
121.122.211.2	
<u>Add</u> <u>E</u> dit	De <u>l</u> ete
Accept SNMP packets from any I Accept SNMP packets from these	T Address
Add Ed <u>i</u> t	Delete
OK	Cancel

Figure 9-15 Set up SNMP Screen

• Community Name

Specify a community name with up to 62 characters (ASCII characters).

• Trap Information button

"Trap Information screen (Figure 9-16)" appears. Register trap information on the screen. Enter each trap information item with up to 79 characters (ASCII characters).

• Trap Transmission Place

The system sends trap information to the registered IP Address.

• Accept SNMP packets from any IP Address

The system accepts SNMP requests from all hosts having requests.

· Accept SNMP packets from these IP Address

The system accepts SNMP requests from the registered IP Address.

Trap Information	×
-Trap Sense Interval <u>I</u> nterval (3-60) :	20 * second[s] Interval that the Disk Array monitors a trap factor.
Trap Information-	
Unit <u>C</u> ontact :	Register the administrator of the Disk Array, administrative department, address, etc.
	Storage Manager
Unit <u>N</u> ame :	Register the Disk Array name, the using host name, etc.
	\$2100
Unit <u>L</u> ocation :	Register the place where the Disk Array is set up.
	TEST
Unit In <u>f</u> o :	In addition, register information required for administration.
	2003.02.25
	0K Cancel

Figure 9-16 Trap Information Screen

Trap Sense Interval:	Set an interval at which the disk array monitors the causes of traps.
Unit Contact:	Enter administrator's information such as the disk array's administrator, management department, or where to contact.
Unit Name:	Enter the disk array name or the name of the host to be used.
Unit Location:	Enter the location where the disk array is installed.
Unit Info:	Enter other information necessary for management.



### IV-167

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

(4) Copy the network setup information

If the disk array contains more than one Service Processor, the network settings of a Service Processor can be copied into a selected Service Processor.

Copy	K
Copy the network setup information on the chosen service processor.	
Object service processor	
Copy origin: the service processor number Olh	
Copy place : the service processor number 00h	
Object item	
- Set up Disk Array TCP/IP Information	
- Set up SCSI Socket	
- Set up SNMP	
0K Cancel	

Figure 9-17 Copy Screen



### 9.4 License

The screen below is provided to unlock the license of a purchased product.

Setting Disk Array
Nickname Platform Network License Special
Please input "license key" which is printed on the purchase product, and click Unlock. The contents of the product are displayed by the Confirm dialog box
Input 'license kev':
Unlock
Get DISK Kriay Into.

Figure 9-18 Setting Disk Array Dialog Box (License)

Enter the license key, which is provided with the purchased product, with 30 characters (6-6-6-6) in half size, and click the [Unlock] button.

The contents of the product of which license is to be unlocked are displayed.



Figure 9-19 Product Contents Confirmation Screen

Click the [Yes] button to unlock the license.

If the license has been unlocked, the message in Figure 9-20 is displayed.



Figure 9-20 Message Indicating that the License Has Already Unlocked

If the license for DynamicDataReplication is unlocked for the first time in the 2000 series disk array (not including S2400), the disk array needs to be restarted. If it is upgraded, the disk array does not need to be restarted.

iSM	
⚠	[25259] The reboot of a Disk Array is required to enable use of DynamicDataReplication 1TB. For this reason, time should carry out to a reboot in an uninfluential time zone to business.
	May I perform immediately?
	<u>Yes</u> <u>N</u> o

Figure 9-21 Disk Array Restart Message

. . . .

### 9.5 Setting Disk Array Time

#### (1) Special screen

The screen shown below (Configuration setting menu  $\rightarrow$  Setting Disk Array  $\rightarrow$  Special) can be used to set the disk array time.

You can also make various settings by activating each checkbox (such as Cross Call, Spare, and Expand LUN) to enable them and then clicking the [Apply] button at lower right. Moreover, immediately after the screen has been displayed or after the setting has been made, current settings for the disk array are activated through radio buttons.

For S400/S1400/S2400/S2800, refer to Figure 9-23.

	👺 Setting Disk Array 🛛 🔀
	Nickname Platform Network License Special
C	Cross Call
	⊙ ON C OFF Set Cross Call
(Δ)	Luto Assignment
(~) {	$\mathbb{C}$ (N( $\underline{\mathbb{I}}$ )) Use alternate path when error occurs.
	$\bigcirc$ OFF(U) Do not use alternate path when error occurs.
C	
(B) ∫	O Auto Repair ( Manually Repair Mode for repairing Spare
`´L	
ſ	Mode for expanding the number of LDs
(C) {	Port Number 00h-00h 🗹 for selected port
L	ON( <u>E</u> nable) OFF( <u>D</u> isable)
	Disk Array Subsystem
ω <sub>1</sub>	<u>Change Time</u> Date&Time 2003/08/30 18:03:00
(⊨) {	Get Log Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log.
	Amly
	Get Disk Array Info. Close Help

Figure 9-22 Special Screen

🚰 Setting Disk Array	×
Nickname   Platform   Network   License   Update   Special	1
Change Time Disk Array Subsystem date and time can be changed. Change Time Present Date&Time : 2004/10/28 18:21:06	
Get Log Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log. Get <u>L</u> og	
Get Disk Array Info. Close <u>H</u> elp	
	Setting Disk Array         Nickname       Platform       Network       License       Update       Special         Change Time       Disk Array Subsystem date and time can be changed.       Image: Change Time       Present DatesTime : 2004/10/28 18:21:06         Cet Log       Get Disk Array Subsystem Internal Log.       Image: Cet Log       Image: Cet Log         Get Log       Get Log       Image: Cet Log       Image: Cet Log         Get Log       Get Log       Image: Cet Log       Image: Cet Log         Get Log       Cet Log       Image: Cet Log       Image: Cet Log         Get Log       Cet Log       Image: Cet Log       Image: Cet Log         Get Log       Cet Log       Image: Cet Log       Image: Cet Log         Get Disk Array Subsystem       Internal Log       Image: Cet Log       Image: Cet Log         Get Disk Array Info.       Close       Image: Cet Log       Image: Cet Log

Figure 9-23 Special Screen (S400/S1400/S2400/S2800)

#### (A) Cross Call

Refer to 8.5.1 "Cross Call and Auto Assignment".

(B) Spare

Refer to 8.3.3 "Spare Rebuilding Mode".

(C) Expand LUN

#### Refer to 0 "

Expand LUN".

(D) Change Time

Can change the disk array time.

If "Set the Date and Time of Disk Array Subsystem according to server Date&Time of Server" is selected, the date/time of the iSM server monitoring the disk array is set. When "Set the Date and Time of Disk Array Subsystem manually" is activated, the disk array date can be changed to arbitrary date. However, this is not possible for automatic setting.

Moreover, for the information on Auto/Manual setting change, refer to the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with your OS.

#### (E) Get Log

Refer to 9.6 "Getting Log in the Disk Array".

Change Disk Array Time	Change Disk Array Time
Set the Date and Time of Disk Array Subsystem according to server Date4Time of Server: 2002/03/14 15:18:34	C Set the Date and Time of Disk Array Subsystem according to gerver Date4Time of Server: 2002/03/14 15:21:02
C Set the Date and Time of Disk Array Subsystem manually Thursday, March 14, 2002	<ul> <li>Set the Date and Time of Disk Array Subsystem manually</li> <li>Thursday, March 14, 2002</li> </ul>
3:16:45 PM	3:16:45 PM
Apply Close	Lapply Close

Figure 9-24 Change Disk Array Time Dialog



# 9.6 Getting Log in the Disk Array

Outputs the internal log data in the disk array to any file.

Click this button to output the check message as shown below.



Figure 9-25 Internal Log Data Output Check Message

Here, click the [OK] button to display the output destination Save As dialog as shown below. Specify any file name and then click the [Save] button to start saving file.

Save As			? ×
Savejn: 🔁	DATA	💌 🗧 🗈 (	* 📰 •
I			
File <u>n</u> ame:	errorlog		<u>S</u> ave
Save as <u>type</u> :	Binary(*.bin)	•	Cancel

Figure 9-26 Save As Dialog



## 9.7 Getting Configuration Information

The configuration information can be acquired in either text or CSV format.

### 9.7.1 Getting Configuration Information in Text Format

Acquire the configuration information in text format. To acquire the configuration information in text format, follow the procedure described below.

#### (1) Operation

Clicking [Get Configuration Setting Info.] button in the Configuration [Setting Mode] menu (Figure 8-21) displays the get configuration information confirmation dialog.

iSM	×
?	[05604] It sometimes costs several minutes for getting configuration information. Save to file?
	Yes No

Figure 9-27 Get Configuration Information Confirmation Dialog

Clicking the [Yes] button in the get configuration information confirmation dialog displays the file format selection dialog.



Figure 9-28 File Format Selection Dialog

Check that the [Text] radio button (default) is checked in the file format selection dialog, and click the [OK] button. The save file confirmation dialog is displayed.



Figure 9-29 Save File Confirmation Dialog

Specify a file name and click the [Save] button.

The configuration information is acquired from the disk array and saved in text format. During the acquisition of the configuration information, the following dialog is displayed.

Get Configuration Info. 🛛 🔀
Configuration info. getting
Cancel

Figure 9-30 Get Configuration Information Progress Dialog

When the information has been saved to the file, a message is displayed notifying you of the completion of the acquisition of the configuration information.



Figure 9-31 Get Configuration Information Completion Message

### 9.7.2 Getting Configuration Information in CSV Format

Acquire the configuration information in CSV format. To acquire the configuration information in CSV format, follow the procedure described below.

#### (1) Operation

Clicking [Get Configuration Setting Info.] button in the Configuration [Setting Mode] menu (Figure 8-21) displays the get configuration information confirmation dialog (Figure 9-27).

Clicking the [Yes] button in the get configuration information confirmation dialog displays the file format selection dialog (Figure 9-28).

Check the [CSV] radio button in the file format selection dialog, and click the [OK] button. The Save As dialog is displayed.

Save As	×
Save configuration information at the for folder.	llowing
Save <u>A</u> s:	
C:\Program Files\NEC\iSMClient\data	B <u>r</u> owse
<u>Save</u> Cancel	

Figure 9-32 Save As Dialog

Specify the destination folder and click the [Save] button.

The default destination folder is the DATA folder immediately below the client installation folder. Because you will get several files of CSV information, create a folder whose name indicates the date and time and save the files immediately below that folder.

Example: April 8, 2003, 8:00 p.m. File name: 200304082000

To change the destination folder, click the [Browse] button and use the Browse for Folder dialog.



Figure 9-33 Browse for Folder Dialog

When the [Save] button is clicked, the configuration information is acquired from the disk array and saved in CSV format. During the acquisition of the configuration information, a message dialog (Figure 9-30) is displayed indicating that the configuration information is being acquired.

When the information has been saved to the file, a message is displayed notifying you of the completion of the acquisition of the configuration information



Figure 9-34 Get Configuration Information Completion Message

# 9.8 Replication Pair Batch Setting

Replication Batch Setting refers to setting replication, which is used for replications, collectively using the definition file. For information on the replication functions, refer to the "Data Replication User's Manual (Function Guide)".

#### (1) Execution procedure

When Replication Batch Setting, click the [Replication Setting] button from "Configuration- [Setting Mode]" to display the Replication Batch Setting dialog. An example of the Replication Batch Setting screen is shown in Figure 9-35.

📅 Replication Batch Setting			×
Read from text file			
		<b>A</b>	
			Extract <u>E</u> rror Line
			Save <u>A</u> s
		<b>_</b>	
T		Þ	
<u>S</u> et Disk Array Subsystem	Close	Help	
🔽 Execute From <u>C</u> ursor Line			

Figure 9-35 Example of Replication Batch Setting Screen

The screen above is operated in the same manner as described in 9.1.5 "Nickname Batch Setting". However, the detailed definitions of the file format and execution results are different.

For information on the file format, refer to Appendix F.2 "Pair Setting File". The execution results are listed below.

success:	Successfully completed.
success(already):	Already set.
failure(already):	Failed, because the volume is already registered with another ATgroup.
failure(already RV):	Failed, because this is already paired with another MV as an RV.
failure(ATgroup invalid):	Failed, because the ATgroup name is invalid.
failure(ATgroup not exist):	Failed, because this ATgroup does not exist.
failure(ATgroup not separated):	Failed, because this ATgroup is not separated.
failure(ATgroup over):	Failed, because no more ATgroup can be defined.

failure(DDR license locked): Failed, because the DynamicDataReplication license is not canceled. failure(DDR not supported): Failed, because the DynamicDataReplication is not supported. failure(Disk array not exist): Failed, because the disk array does not exist. failure(DR not supported): Failed, because RemoteDataReplication/DisasterRecovery is not supported. failure(DR license locked): Failed, because the RemoteDataReplication/DisasterRecovery license is not canceled. failure(Freeze): Failed, because the disk array is freezing. failure(invalid): Failed, because the description of the batch setup file is invalid. failure(LINK path): Failed, because all link paths between units are faulty. failure(MV is dRV): Failed in paring the DDR, because the MV is already the RV of the DDR. failure(MV is freeze): Failed, because the MV is freezing. failure(MV is LV): Failed, because the MV is classified as LV. failure(MV is monitoring stop): Failed, because the MV is monitoring stop. failure(MV is reserved vol): Failed, because the MV is a reserve group. failure(MV is SDV): Failed, because the MV is classified as SDV. failure(MV is SV): Failed, because the MV is classified as SV. failure(MV not exist): Failed, because the volume (MV) does not exist. failure(MV not managed): Failed, because the MV is not managed. failure(MV not pair): Failed, because the volume is not paired. failure(MV not primary vol): Failed, because the specified MV is not a PV (MV). failure(MV not RDR): Failed, because the specified MV is not RDR-paired. failure(monitoring stop): Failed, because the disk array is monitoring stop. Failed, because the disk arrays of the MV and RV are not linked. failure(not link): failure(not separated): Failed, because the status is not separated. failure(not managed): Failed, because the disk array is not managed. failure(Pair loop): Failed, because the pair layer will serve as a loop. failure(Pair over): Failed, because the MV cannot accept pair setting any more. failure(RDR license locked): Failed, because the RemoteDataReplication license is not canceled. failure(RDR not supported): Failed, because the RemoteDataReplication is not supported. failure(RV is BV): Failed, because the RV is classified as BV. failure(RV is DDR MV): Failed, because the RV is already the MV of the DDR. failure(RV is freeze): Failed, because the RV is freezing. failure(RV is LV): Failed, because the RV is classified as LV. failure(RV is monitoring stop): Failed, because the RV is monitoring stop. failure(RV is reserved vol): Failed, because the RV is a reserve group. failure(RV is SDV): Failed, because the RV is classified as SDV. failure(RV is SV): Failed, because the RV is classified as SV. failure(RV not exist): Failed, because the volume (RV) does not exist. failure(RV registered ATgroup): Failed, because the RV is already registered with an ATgroup. failure(several same ATgroups): Failed, because there are multiple ATgroups. failure(different diskarray(RV)): Failed, because the pair setting does not correspond to the RDR pair that is already registered with the ATgroup. failure(same name): Failed, because the same ATgroup name already exists.

\_\_\_\_\_

.....

Ĵ

failure(Vol capacity unmatch):	Failed, because the volume capacity does not match.
failure(Vol not exist):	Failed, because the volume does not exist.
failure(Vol not pair):	Failed, because the pair is already forcibly deleted.
failure(Vol OS type unmatch):	Failed, because the volume format does not match.
failure(Vol to ATgroup over):	Failed, because no more volumes can be registered with the ATgroup.
failure(nnh):	Other error (nnh: Internal error code)
failure(several RDR pairs):	Failed, because the volumes registered with the ATgroup cannot accept new
	disk array pair setting, or because a volume having multiple RDR pairs cannot
	be registered with the ATgroup.

4

.

As a replication setting file, it is possible to use the file which is output by using the "Save the pair setup information" function in "Replication Management". .....

### IV-181

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

# Chapter 10 Access Control Operations

This chapter describes Access Control operations.

# **10.1 Changing the Port Mode**

Change the port mode on the following screen.

cessControl Settin	g/Reference				
Setting Access Con Char Start	ntrol nge <u>P</u> ort Mode Access Control	Product Info Purchase Pr NEC Storag Product Use 9	rmation coduct Clas ge AccessCo e Situation /	ssification- omtrol(16 co n (16 comme	nnections) ections)
		9	1	(16 conne	ections)

Figure 10-1 [Setting/Reference] Tab Screen

#### (1) [Change Port Mode] button

Clicking this button will display the mode of each port of the disk array on the "Change Port Mode" dialog screen, and change to the WWN mode and Port mode becomes possible. If you want to change a port in Port mode, which is already linked with an LD Set, into WWN mode, unlink the port from the LD Set and then change to the WWN mode.

The port number indicates "Director Number - Port Number".

Port Number	Port Name	Mode	^
07h-00h	200000004C517B7D0700	WWN	
07h-01h	200000004C517B7D0701	Port	
0fh-00h	200000004C517B7D0F00	Port	
0fh-01h	200000004C517B7D0F01	Port	
14h-00h	200000004C517B7D1400	WWN	
15h-00h	200000004C517B7D1500	WWN	
15h-01h	200000004C517B7D1501	WWN	
06h-01h	Biz_l	WWN	
0eh-01h	Biz 2	TITTITN	
Mode Type-	e <u>O P</u> ort Mode		
Batch	Changing	<u>C</u> hange	

Figure 10-2 Change Port Mode

[Mode Type]	Select a new port mod	le.		
	Ports cannot be changed from the WWN mode into Port mode in			
	AccessControl(WWN)-applied disk arrays. (If the change is necessary, consu maintenance person about it.)			
	• WWN Mode:	Changes the port into	o WWN mode.	
	• Port Mode:	Changes the port into	o Port mode.	
[Batch Changing]	Clicking this button sets all the ports into the mode selected in [Mode Type]. In this case, it is not necessary to select ports from the Port List.			
[Change]	Select a target port and	d click the [Change] b	utton. The selected port is set into the	
	orts can be selected and set if the port list			
	screen shows the same	e mode for them. In a	addition, a preliminary confirmation dialog	
	appears to confirm the previous port mode and new port mode.			

firm Settin	g						
hange the	Mode of Port						
<u>ن</u> (?	5780]						
√ Th	e specified p	ort is changed to WWN	mode.				
Γ	Port List						
	Port Number	Port Name	Mode Before	Change	Mode	After	
	📜 1dh-03h	300000000000031D03	Port		WWN		
					_		
	[•]						
		OK	Cancel				

Figure 10-3 Preliminary Confirmation Dialog



.....

з.

The Change Port Mode operation immediately reflects on the Disk Array. Therefore, if settings are wrong, there is a possibility that accessing from the business server to the LD may not be possible. It is necessary to perform operation after checking the operation state. Furthermore, stop business or the business server according to the necessity.

.....

.....



# 10.2 Setting LD Sets

To set LD Sets, refer to the following descriptions.

Setting an LD Set (10.2.1)

Linking an LD Set and Path (10.2.2)

Changing the LD Set Name (10.2.3)

Deleting an LD Set (10.2.4)

	ode]						
ccessControl Setting	/Reference						
-Accessible LD List							
. NX: HPRP240	0/LDSET	LUN	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID	Capacity[G
🕂 🕀 🛄 🎹 NX: RP5430/3	LDSET	0000h	0000h	WN	XA NCAAS 0000	- <u> </u>	0
	LDSET	<b>0001</b> h	0121h	WN	XiAn_Client_0121	0	o
	/LDSET	_					
E SEI WN: 120LG_2/LDSET							
	00-C939-D7E6						
	9/LDSET						
🛨 🗖 🔣 WN: EXP_089	O/LDSET						
THE SHERK / LI		4					
		<u> </u>					
LD Set			Logic	al Disk-			
New	Delete Lin	k <u>P</u> ath	] <b>[</b>	New Setti	ng 1 Add		D <u>e</u> lete
Candidate LD List-							
Se <u>l</u> ection	ALL			•		🗖 All S	elec <u>t</u> ion
Number OS Type	Logical Disk	Name RA	INK	RAID Cap	acity[GB] Group	Purpos	se 🔺
1 0000h WN	XA_NCAAS_0000	00	)h-Oeh	0	0.1		
🛛 🖗 0001h NX	REFAM_4G_HPUX	00	)h-00h	l	4.0	RPL	
	REFAM_4G_HPUX	00	)h-00h	1	4.0	RPL	
D UUUZA NX				_			
0002h NX	REFAM_4G_HPUX	00	Jh-00h	1	4.0	RPL	
0002h NX 0003h NX 0004h NX	REFAM_4G_HPUX REFAM_4G_HPUX	00 00	)h-00h )h-00h	1	4.0 4.0	RPL RPL	
0002h NX 0003h NX 0004h NX 0005h NX	REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX	00 00 00	)h-00h )h-00h )h-00h	1 1 1	4.0 4.0 4.0	RPL RPL RPL	<b></b>
0002h         NX           0003h         NX           0004h         NX           0005h         NX           0005h         NX           0005h         NX	REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4G_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX	00 00 00	)h-00h )h-00h )h-00h	1	4.0 4.0 4.0	RPL RPL RPL	
0002h NX 0003h NX 0004h NX 0005h NX	REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX	00	0h-00h 0h-00h 0h-00h		4.0 4.0 4.0	RPL RPL RPL	<b></b>

Figure 10-4 [AccessControl] Tab Screen

### 10.2.1 Setting an LD Set

Clicking the [New] button on the AccessControl tab screen (Figure 10-4) will display the following dialog screen, thereby a new LD Set can be created.

. .

New LD Set X
Please input basic information of new LD Set.
Platform : WN
LD Set Name : Windows_server
0K Cancel

Figure 10-5 New LD Set

For LD Set, specify the platform of the business server that accesses a logical disk via the LD set. A list of specifiable platforms is displayed.

The following platforms can be specified:

Platform	Description
A2	ACOS-2 system
AX	AIX system
CX	Solaris system
LX	Linux system
NX	HP-UX system
WN	Windows system

Furthermore, the LD Set name can be set by using arbitrary 16 characters including alphanumeric characters, "/" and

However, when the combination of the Platform and the LD Set name have already been set to other LD Set, new settings are not possible.


Only a Platform and a name are set for a newly created LD Set. For the business server to recognize logical disks, it is necessary to set actual path information through [Link Path] and also assign logical disks.

A single LD Set is linked with each business server. Thus, the name of the business server to be connected to the port of the disk array to be linked or the name of a business server having WWPN should be specified for the LD Set name.

 $(\mathbf{i})$ 

If the [New] operation fails, the error dialog screen showing the failure will be displayed.

When an operation request is in error, there is a possibility of inconsistency between the disk array setting information and the information administrated on the iSM client. Therefore, click [Get Disk Array Info.].

# 10.2.2 Linking an LD Set and Path

Selecting an LD Set and clicking the [Link Path] button on the AccessControl tab screen (Figure 10-4) will display the following dialog screen.

Link Path Mode Selection		×
Please choose the path	information which links LD set.	
Path Information		
<u>w</u> wpn	WWPN of HBA of the business server which accesses a logic disk is set up.	
Port Number	The port of the Disk Array which connects the business server which accesses a logic disk is set up.	
	Close	

Figure 10-6 Path Information Selection

The [Link Path] button is enabled only when a single LD Set is selected from the tree view located in the Accessible LD List display area.

The linking of path information with an LD Set means the setting of the HBA's WWPN of the business server that actually accesses logical disks or the setting of the port (in the Port mode) of the disk array to which the business server is connected.

# **(**

The WWPN (World Wide Port Name) set for the HBA of the business server is necessary for determining whether to permit access in the WWN mode in the [Path Link] dialog box.

The WWN (World Wide Name) consists of the WWNN (World Wide Node Name) and the WWPN (World Wide Port Name), and is allocated to the HBA (Host Bus Adaptor; also called FC controller) as ID code information inherent to the HBA. For information on the acquisition method, refer to the "Access Control User's Guide" for this disk array series.



Link Path	×
Link Path (05742) The Link Path modification Platform : A2 LD Set Name : TEST1	n is set to Disk Array Subsystem.
Current <u>P</u> ath Info. Path info 5555-5555-5555-2222	Path Info. Input Field  Path Info. Input Field  Input WWPN of HBA port of server.  Add  Replace  Delete  The present path information(WWN)link count 2
OK	Cancel <u>H</u> elp

Figure 10-7 Linking of Path Information (WWPN)

Link Path	×
Link Path	
[05742] The Link Path modification is	s set to Disk Array Subsystem.
Platform : A2	
LD Set Name : TEST1	
Current <u>P</u> ath Info.	Port Number. Selection Field
Path info	Port Number Port Name
1db-03b (300000000	0ch-03h 30000000000
0ch-00h (3000000000	0dh-00h 30000000000
0ch-02h (3000000000	0dh-02h 30000000000
0dh-01h (300000000	0dh-03h 3000000000000000000000000000000000
	Add Beplace Delete
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	The present path information(Port)link count 4 Cancel <u>H</u> elp

Figure 10-8 Linking of Path Information (Port Number)

### IV-189

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

On this dialog screen, the following operations are possible.

Path Info Input Field

Newly added or replaced path information is entered into this area. It is necessary to enter 16 single-bit, hexadecimal digit characters into this input field.

• Port Number Selection Field

The port number to be newly added or to be replaced is selected in this field. Only ports in port number are displayed in the field.

• Current Path Info

Displays path information current set for the disk array and path information which has been changed by operating each button on this dialog screen.

• [Add] button

When new path information is entered into the "Path Info Input Field", clicking this button will add the entered path information to the last line of the "Current Path Info" display area.

Select a target port number from "Port Number Selection Field" and click the [Add] button. The path information of the selected port number is added to the last line of the "Current Path Info" display area.

.....

Up to 64 pieces of path information can be set for one LD Set.

To apply settings for the disk array, click the [OK] button.

# ٩

When the [Add] button is clicked, the product purchase situation is checked. If the upper limit of the Path Count permitted for the product is reached in the Disk Array as a whole, an error dialog screen appears in this stage, which makes the linking impossible. Furthermore, a WWPN or port number linked with another LD Set cannot be registered dually for another LD Set. If an error message showing the situation, specify a different WWPN or port number.

• [Replace] button

After entering new path information into "Path Info Input Field" and selecting Replace target path information from the "Current Path Info" display area, clicking this button will replace the path information selected in the "Current Path Info" display area with newly entered path information.

Select a target port number from "Port Number Selection Field", select Replace target path information from the "Current Path Info" display area, and then click the [Replace] button. The path information of the selected port number is replaced by the path information selected from the "Current Path Info" display area.

Only a piece of path information can be selected at a time from the "Current Path Info" display area. To apply settings for the disk array, click the [OK] button.

• [Delete] button

Selecting Delete target path information from the "Current Path Info" display area and clicking this button will delete the selected path information from the "Current Path Info" display area.

Only a piece of path information can be selected at a time from the "Current Path Info" display area.

To apply settings for the disk array, click the [OK] button.

[OK] button

Clicking this button will display the operation confirmation message, and path information shown in the "Current Path Info" display area will be applied to the disk array.



The WWPN of path information can be set even when the set value is different from the WWPN of the business server HBA which actually accesses logical disks. Therefore, pay careful attention not to set a wrong value.



Application of path information immediately reflects on the Disk Array. Therefore, if setting information is wrong, there is a possibility that accessing from the business server may not be possible. Pay careful attention to this. Especially, when settings are wrong for deleting or replacing path information, the business server may suddenly stop recognizing the logical disk in use. It is necessary to perform operation after checking the operation state. Furthermore, stop business or the business server according to the necessity.

[Cancel] button

When changes made on this dialog screen are not set for the disk array, the following dialog screen will appear and the execution of the operation will be confirmed.





#### • [Help] button

Clicking this button will display the Help screen concerning the "Link Path" screen.

If the [Link Path] operation fails, the error dialog screen showing the failure will be displayed. When an operation request is in error, there is a possibility of inconsistency between the disk array setting information and the information administrated on the iSM client. Therefore, click [Get Disk Array Info.].



Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

# 10.2.3 Changing the LD Set Name

By clicking right-button after selecting LD Set, the pop-up menu appears allowing selection of name change of LD Set. Selecting the menu displays the LD Set name change screen.

Accessible LD List							
<b>Sti</b> LD Set	LUN	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID	Cap	Pui
E CX: DB_SERVER	20000h	0000h		200000004C5176	5	132.9	
⊕	20001h	0001h	AZ	200000004C5170001	1	33.2	
E LX: NAIL_SERVER	20002h	0002h	AZ	200000004C5170002	1	33.2	
• NX:Lserverl_1	0003h	0015h		200000004C5176	0	17.0	
H. NX:Lserver1_2							
	Set						

Figure 10-10 LD Set Pop-up Menu Screen

Rename LD Set	×
LD Set Information	-
Platform : NX	
LD Set Name : WEB_SERVER	
New LD Set Information	
LD Set Name :	
0K Cancel	

Figure 10-11 Rename LD Set Screen

For LD Set, specify the platform of the business server that accesses logical disks via the LD Set. Refer to Table 10-1 "Platforms" for the platforms that can be specified.

LD Set name can be specified with 16 characters including arbitrary alphanumeric characters, "/", and "\_". However, if a combination of Platform and LD Set name has been set, new setting can no longer be made.

Clicking the [OK] button displays a dialog for preliminarily confirming the change. Clicking the [OK] button again on the dialog sets the new platform and LD set name to the disk array.



Figure 10-12 Preliminary Confirmation Dialog

⚠
When an LD Set is renamed, the disk array dynamically changes individual response control for each OS according
to the platform information. Therefore, it is necessary to perform operation after checking the operation state.
Furthermore, stop business or the business server according to the necessity.



### 10.2.4 Deleting an LD Set

Select an LD Set from the tree view located in the Accessible LD List display area and then click [Delete] button to delete the LD Set.

The following selection is available for the LD Set.

- Selection of treetop LD Set item
- Selection of single LD Set
- Selection of multiple LD Sets

Clicking the [Delete] button displays the following dialog for confirming the deletion:

Confirm Se	etting			×
LD Set	Delete [05704] All the selected	LD Sets are de	eleted.	
	LD Set List			
	Platform	LD Set Name	Path	
	SET CX	backupl	9999-9999-000B-0001	
		OK	Cancel	

Figure 10-13 Preliminary Confirmation Dialog

By deleting an LD Set, the LD Set, logical disk information assigned to the LD Set and path information linked to the LD Set are deleted.



### IV-195

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

If the [Delete] operation fails, the error dialog screen showing the failure will be displayed.

When an operation request is in error, there is a possibility of inconsistency between the disk array setting information and the information administrated on the iSM client. Therefore, click [Get Disk Array Info.].



# **10.3 Assigning a Logical Disk**

# 10.3.1 Assigning a Logical Disk Newly

When setting permission of access from the business server to logical disks, select LD Sets of a desirable business server from the tree view in the Accessible LD List display area. Then, select New Setting target logical disks from the [Candidate LD List] display area, and click [New Setting] button.

Assignment of logical disks by using the [New Setting] button invalidates the current assignment state of logical disks assigned to the LD Set and newly assigns the logical disks.

Logical disks can be assigned to multiple LD Sets.

Clicking the [New Setting] button will display the "LD Setting" dialog screen shown below.

LUN	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID	Capacity[GB]	
0000h	0806h	CX	S4100_0806h_CX	1	0.2	Тор
<b>0001h</b>	0807h	CX	S4100_0807h_CX	1	0.2	
						Up
						Down
						Bottom

Figure 10-14 LD Setting

Logical disks to be modified are listed in the [Candidate LD List] display area.

Logical disk information displayed on the "LD Setting" dialog screen is as follows:

LUN LUN LUN to which newly added, movable logical disks are assigned Number OS Type Logical Disk Name RAID Capacity

On the "LD Setting" dialog screen, the following buttons are operable.

Moreover, one logical disk can be selected at a time to move the logical disk on this dialog screen. The logical disks in the list can be sorted into a different order according to an item other than LUN.

[Top]	Moves a selected logical disk to the top line of the logical disk group.	
[Up]	Moves a selected logical disk to the previous line.	
[Down]	Moves a selected logical disk to the following line.	
[Bottom]	Moves a selected logical disk to the end line of the logical disk group.	
[OK]	Clicking this button displays a dialog for confirming the new settings.	If the new settin
	disks from the LD set a disks for confirming the logical disks to be de	lated in displayed

OK] Clicking this button displays a dialog for confirming the new settings. If the new settings delete logical disks from the LD set, a dialog for confirming the logical disks to be deleted is displayed, and then a dialog appears to confirm the new settings.

The setting	j check						×
LD New	Setting						
?	[05764]	C is dela	t ad				
	Assignment of	LD is ir	validate	d.			
	-LDSET LIST-						
	Platform	LD Se	at Name	Path			
	SET CX	backu	.pl	9999-9999	-000B-0	001	
	-LD LIST						
	Number 0	)S Type	Logical 3	Disk Name	RAID	Capacity[GB]	
	10201h (	x	MAS_RV1_	4G_000	1	4.1	
	-			-			
			077	Conc	101		
					er		

Figure 10-15 Preliminary Confirmation Dialog (for Logical Disks Deleted)

### IV-198

Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

The setting	g check					×
LD New	Setting					
?	[05761] LD is added	l bv new	order.			
~VF		,				
	LDSET LIST	т ———				
	Platform	LI	D Set Name	e Path		
	SET CX	bi	ackupl	9999-9999-000B	-0001	
	<u> </u>					
	LD LIST-					
	LUN	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID	Capacity[GB]
	0000h	0200h	сх	WK_RV1_4G_055	1	4.1
	0001h	0201h	CX	MAS_RV1_4G_000	1	4.1
	•					
				1	,	
			OK	Cancel		

Figure 10-16 Preliminary Confirmation Dialog (for Logical Disks Newly Assigned)

[Cancel] Clicking this button will close the "LD Setting" dialog screen. Furthermore, the following dialog screen will be displayed and confirmation will be made about whether to close the "LD Setting" dialog screen or not by considering the settings invalid.



Figure 10-17 Confirmation Dialog Screen 3



.....

Application of the New Setting invalidates all of the current assignment settings for the logical disks and new assignment settings for the logical disk immediately reflect on the Disk Array. Therefore, if setting information is wrong, the business server suddenly stops recognizing the logical disk in use. It is necessary to perform this operation after checking the operation state. Furthermore, stop business or the business server according to the necessity.

If the [New Setting] operation fails, the error dialog screen showing the failure will be displayed. When an operation request is in error, there is a possibility of inconsistency between the disk array setting information and the information administrated on the iSM client. Therefore, click [Get Disk Array Info.].



# 10.3.2 Assigning an Additional Logical Disk

When setting permission of access from the business server to logical disks, select LD Sets of a desirable business server from the tree view of the Accessible LD List display area. Then, select logical disks to be added from the [Candidate LD List] display area, and click the [Add] button.

Logical disks will be added to all of the path information linked with the selected LD Sets. Furthermore, Logical disks can be added to the LD Sets which are not linked with path information.

Logical disks to be added need to satisfy the following conditions.

 Logical disks must be the following disks. Ordinary disk
 Replication volume set in pairs
 Volume with snapshot setting (BV)
 Link-volume (LV)

Clicking the [Add] button will display the "LD Setting" dialog screen shown below.

TRC OL P	) to Add Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID	Capacity[GB]	
¶ 0000h	015eh	NX	1126_015eh_NX	1	3.9	Top
📍 0001h	015fh	LX	1126_015fh_LX	1	3.9	
0002h	0154h	WN	1126_0154h_WN	1	3.9	
	01000	014	1120_010001_004	Ť	0.9	Down
						Bottom

Figure 10-18 LD Setting

The logical disk to be newly added is displayed at the end of the logical disk group which has been assigned on the "LD Setting" dialog screen, and LUN can be changed by button operation. However, in the states (1) and (2) stated below, logical disks to be newly added will be displayed after the selected LUN line:

- (1) The LUN selected in the Accessible LD List display area has not assigned logical disks.
- (2) The number of selected logical disks coincides with the number of lines of the LUN which has not assigned logical disks or less.

Furthermore, when selecting multiple LUNs which have not assigned logical disks, the selected LUNs must be sequential.

Only a newly added logical disk group can be moved on this dialog screen. Logical disks cannot be moved to the LUN displayed as the 🕴 icon. Furthermore, the LUN to which logical disks have been assigned cannot be changed.

Logical disk information displayed on the "LD Setting" dialog screen is as follows:

ę

: LUN to which newly added, movable logical disks are assigned

: LUN whose logical disks cannot be moved

Number OS Type Logical Disk Name RAID Capacity

On the "LD Setting" dialog screen, the following buttons are operable.

[Top]	Moves a selected logical disk in a newly added logical disk group to the top line of the newly added logical
	disk group.
[Up]	Moves a selected logical disk in a newly added logical disk group to the previous line of the newly added
	logical disk group.
[Down]	Moves a selected logical disk in a newly added logical disk group to the following line of the newly added
	logical disk group.
[Bottom]	Moves a selected logical disk in a newly added logical disk group to the end line of the newly added logical
	disk group.
[OK]	Clicking this button displays a dialog for preliminarily confirming the addition:

ID 761]         D is added by new order.         IDSET LIST         Platform ID Set Name Path         CN CAS         ID LIST         ID LIST         ID VICTOR IN CAS         ID VICTOR IN CAS SALOO_705_RPL 1 2         IOOODA         IOODA	The setting	check					×
Image: View of the state of the st	LD Add						
V [05761] ID is added by new order. IDSET LIST Platform LD Set Name Path CN CAS ID LIST ID LIST UNN Number OS Type Logical Disk Name RAID Capacit. 0000h 0001h 0705h WN CAS_S4100_705_RPL 1 2 0002h 0706h WN CAS_S4100_705_RPL 1 2 0002h 0706h WN CAS_S4100_706_RPL 1 2 0003h 0806h CX S4100_0806h_CX 1 C	_						
IDERT LIST       Platform     LD Set Name       Path       ID       ICN       CAS         ID         ID        ID	?	[05761] LD is added	bv new	order.			
LDSET LIST         Platform       LD Set Name       Path         Image: CN       CAS         Image: CN       Number         Image: CN       Number         Image: CN       CAS	-11-		-				
Distform       LD Set Name       Path         ED       CN       CAS         LD       LIST         LUN       Number OS Type       Logical Disk Name       RAID Capacit.         0000h       0001h 0705h WN       CAS_S4100_705_RPL       1       2         0002h       0706h WN       CAS_S4100_706_RPL       1       2         0003h       0806h       CX       S4100_0806h_CX       1       0         Image: Non-State of the state o		LDSET LIST	r ———				
ID LIST         IUN       Number       OS Type       Logical Disk Name       RAID       Capacit.         0000h       0001h       0705h       WN       CAS_S4100_705_RPL       1       2         0002h       0706h       WN       CAS_S4100_706_RPL       1       2         0003h       0806h       CX       S4100_0806h_CX       1       C         IUN       OK       Cancel		Platform	LD	Set Name	Path		
ID LIST         IUN       Number       OS Type       Logical Disk Name       RAID       Capacit.         0000h       0001h       0705h       WN       CAS_S4100_705_RPL       1       2         0002h       0706h       WN       CAS_S4100_706_RPL       1       2         0003h       0806h       CX       S4100_0806h_CX       1       C         I       <		SET CN	CA	.S			
ID LIST         IUN       Number       OS Type       Logical Disk Name       RAID Capacit.         0000h       0001h       0705h       WN       CAS_S4100_705_RPL       1       2         0002h       0706h       WN       CAS_S4100_706_RPL       1       2         0003h       0806h       CX       S4100_0806h_CX       1       C         I       I       I       I       I       I       I       I         0003h       0806h       CX       S4100_0806h_CX       1       C         I </th <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>							
ID LIST         IUW       Number       OS Type       Logical Disk Name       RAID       Capacit.         0000h       0001h       0705h       WN       CAS_S4100_705_RPL       1       2         0002h       0706h       WN       CAS_S4100_706_RPL       1       2         0003h       0806h       CX       S4100_0806h_CX       1       C         I       <							
ID LIST       IUN     Number     OS Type     Logical Disk Name     RAID     Capacit.       0000h     0001h     0705h     WN     CAS_S4100_705_RPL     1     2       0002h     0706h     WN     CAS_S4100_706_RPL     1     2       0003h     0806h     CX     S4100_0806h_CX     1     C							
LD LIST UN Number OS Type Logical Disk Name RAID Capacit. 0000h 0001h 0705h WN CAS_S4100_705_RPL 1 2 0002h 0706h WN CAS_S4100_706_RPL 1 2 0003h 0806h CX S4100_0806h_CX 1 C							
LD LIST UNN Number OS Type Logical Disk Name RAID Capacit. 0000h 0001h 0705h WN CAS_S4100_705_RPL 1 2 0002h 0706h WN CAS_S4100_706_RPL 1 2 0003h 0806h CX S4100_0806h_CX 1 C							
LD LIST LUN Number OS Type Logical Disk Name RAID Capacit. 0000h 0001h 0705h WN CAS_S4100_705_RPL 1 2 0002h 0706h WN CAS_S4100_706_RPL 1 2 0003h 0806h CX S4100_0806h_CX 1 C							
LD LIST LUN Number OS Type Logical Disk Name RAID Capacit. 0000h 0001h 0705h WN CAS_S4100_705_RPL 1 2 0002h 0706h WN CAS_S4100_706_RPL 1 2 0003h 0806h CX S4100_0806h_CX 1 C							
LUN         Number         OS Type         Logical Disk Name         RAID         Capacit.           0000h         0001h         0705h         WN         CAS_S4100_705_RPL         1         2           0002h         0706h         WN         CAS_S4100_706_RPL         1         2           0003h         0806h         CX         S4100_0806h_CX         1         C           Image: Comparison of the temperature         000000000000000000000000000000000000		LD LIST					
0000h       0001h       0705h       WN       CAS_S4100_705_RPL       1       2         0002h       0706h       WN       CAS_S4100_706_RPL       1       2         0003h       0806h       CX       S4100_0806h_CX       1       C         Image: Concel       0K       Cancel       Cancel       C		LUN	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID	Capacit.
0001h       0705h       WN       CAS_S4100_705_RPL       1       2         0002h       0706h       WN       CAS_S4100_706_RPL       1       2         0003h       0806h       CX       S4100_0806h_CX       1       C         Image: Comparison of the second s		¶ 0000h					
0002h 0706h WN CAS_S4100_706_RPL 1 2 0003h 0806h CX S4100_0806h_CX 1 C		1 0001h	0705h	WN	CAS_S4100_705_RPL	1	z
0003h 0806h CX S4100_0806h_CX 1 C		0002h	0706h	WN	CAS_S4100_706_RPL	1	z
OK Cancel			0806h	CX	S4100_0806h_CX	1	C
OK Cancel							
OK Cancel							
0K Cancel							
0K Cancel							
				OK	Cancel		

Figure 10-19 Preliminary Confirmation Dialog

[Cancel] Clicking this button will close the "LD Setting" dialog screen. Furthermore, the following dialog screen will be displayed and confirmation will be made about whether to close the "LD Setting" dialog screen or not by considering the settings invalid.



Figure 10-20 Confirmation Dialog Screen 1

The logical disk display item order can be changed. For information on the settings, refer to "Client Start/Stop" in
the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with the OS in use.



If the [Add] operation fails, the error dialog screen showing the failure will be displayed.

When an operation request is in error, there is a possibility of inconsistency between the disk array setting information and the information administrated on the iSM client. Therefore, click [Get Disk Array Info.].



. .

# 10.3.3 Deassigning a Logical Disk

When setting inaccessibility from the business server to logical disks, stop the assignment. In this case, select logical disks or LD Sets of a desirable business server from the Accessible LD List display area, and then click the [Delete] button.

Logical disks that can be deleted are as follows:

- Ordinary disk
- Replication volume set in pairs
- Volume with snapshot setting (BV)
- Link-volume (LV)

Clicking the [Delete] button displays the following dialog for confirming the deletion:

The setting	check				×
LD Delet	te				
?	[05760] The selected	LDick	lalated		
	The selecced	. 10 15 (	leieced.		
	LDSET LIST				
	Platform	LD	Set Name	Path	
	SET CN	CAS	5		
	<u> </u>				
	LD LIST				
	LUN	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID Capacit
	1 0000h				
	1 0001h	0705h	WN	CAS_S4100_705_RPL	1 2
	- 0002h	0706h	WN	CAS_S4100_706_RPL	1 2
			OK	Cancel	

Figure 10-21 Preliminary Confirmation Dialog

When selected logical disks are assigned to multiple LD Sets, the following dialog screen is displayed and the execution of the Delete operation to multiple LD Sets is reconfirmed.



Figure 10-22 Confirmation Dialog Screen 2

This operation deletes logical disks from the target LD Set only which has been selected through its check box. Logical disks which have been deleted from all of the LD Sets belong to the Preserve Group.

The Delete operation deletes explicitly selected logical disks or the logical disks assigned to the explicitly selected LD Set. Therefore, logical disks assigned to the unselected LD Set are not deleted.

Deletion of the logical disk from the LD Set immediately reflects on the Disk Array. If Delete operation is wrong, the business server suddenly stops recognizing the logical disk in use. It is necessary to perform Delete operation after checking the operation state. Furthermore, stop business or the business server according to the necessity.

If the [Delete] operation fails, the error dialog screen showing the failure will be displayed.

When an operation request is in error, there is a possibility of inconsistency between the disk array setting information and the information administrated on the iSM client. Therefore, click [Get Disk Array Info.].



....

# **10.4 Starting the Access Control**

Start the Access Control on the following screen.

AccessControl- [Setting Mode]	
AccessControl Setting/Reference	
Setting Access Control Change Port Mode Start Access Control	Product Information Purchase Product Classification NEC Storage AccessControl(40 connections) Product Use Situation 32 / (40 connections)
Get Disk Array I <u>n</u> fo.	Close Help

Figure 10-23 [Setting/Reference] Tab Screen



### (1) [Start Access Control] button

Clicking this button will validate Access Control settings from the business server to logical disks.

Clicking the [Start Access Control] button displays the following confirmation message:

h			
	iSM		X
	<u>.</u>	[05384] Cross Call and Access Control of Disk Array Subsystem are set to ON. In the iSM client, once Access Control has been started, Access Control cannot be stopped.	
		XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	
		*There is a case where it becomes impossible for a LD to recognize suddenly from a Business Server.	
		*The data mismatching by being cash un-reflected on a Business Server may occur.	
		*The data in LD may be damaged.	
		****	
		OK Cancel	

Figure 10-24 Start Access Control

In the iSM client, once Access Control has been started, Access Control cannot be stopped. (If necessary, consult with a maintenance engineer.)

If Access Control is already in operation, the [Start Access Control] button is inoperable.

⚠
The Start Access Control operation immediately reflects on the Disk Array. Therefore, if assignment of logical
disks to LD Sets or Link Path settings is wrong, there is a possibility that accessing from the business server to
logical disks may not be possible. It is necessary to perform operation after checking the operation state.
Furthermore, stop business or the business server according to the necessity.



. . .

# **10.5 Access Control Screen**

This section describes functions available when you purchase program product "AccessControl". The Access Control is optional software.

The Access Control provides functions to set and unset information on accessibility from the business server to logical disks.

# **10.5.1 Access Control Setting Screen**

Clicking the [Setting Access Control] button from the Configuration - [Setting Mode] screen of the iSM client will display the following setting screen.

-	g/ Kererence					
Accessible LD Lis	t			1		
I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	00/LDSET <u>LUN</u>	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID	Capacity[G
	/LDSET	000h 0000h	WN	XA_NCAAS_0000	0	0
		01h 0121h	WN	XiAn_Client_0121	0	0
	3/LDSET					
- V SE WN:DELL R	EFAM/LDSET					
₩ 1000-00	000-C939-D7E6					
	89/LDSET					
	90/LDSET					
+ INFI MN·SHRRK/	LDSRT					) F
LD Set Logical Disk						
-LD Set		Logi	cal Disk-			
LD Set	Delete Link Pa	th Dogi	cal Disk- New Settin	ng 1 Add	I.	D <u>e</u> lete
LD Set	Delete Link Pa	th	cal Disk— New Setti	ng 1 <u>A</u> dd	_ <b>L</b>	D <u>e</u> lete
LD Set	Delete Link Pa	th	cal Disk-	ng 🗍 Add		D <u>e</u> lete
LD Set <u>New</u> -Candidate LD List Se <u>l</u> ection	Delete Link Pa	th	cal Disk New Setti T	ng 🗍 <u>k</u> dd		D <u>e</u> lete elec <u>t</u> ion
LD Set New Candidate LD List Selection Number OS Type	Delete Link Pa	th 1	cal Disk New Settin V RAID Cap	ng 1 Add	All S	D <u>e</u> lete elec <u>t</u> ion
LD Set New -Candidate LD List Selection Number OS Type 0000h WN	Delete Link Pa	th 1	cal Disk New Settin RAID Cap 0	ng 1 Add	All S	D <u>e</u> lete election
LD Set New -Candidate LD List Selection Number OS Type 0000h WN 0001h NX	Delete Link Pa	Logi th	cal Disk New Settin RAID Cap 0 1	ng 1 Add	All S Purpos RPL	D <u>e</u> lete elec <u>t</u> ion
LD Set New Candidate LD List Selection Number OS Type 0000h WN 0001h NX 0002h NX	Delete Link Pa ALL E Logical Disk Name XA_NCAAS_0000 REFAM_4G_HPUX REFAM_4G_HPUX	PANK 00h-0eh 00h-00h 00h-00h	cal Disk New Settin RAID Cap 0 1 1	ng 1 <u>A</u> dd pacity[GB] Group 0.1 4.0 4.0	All S Purpos RPL RPL	D <u>e</u> lete elec <u>t</u> ion
LD Set New Candidate LD List Selection Number OS Type 0000h WN 0001h NX 0002h NX 0003h NX	Delete Link Pa ALL e Logical Disk Name XA_NCAAS_0000 REFAM_4G_HPUX REFAM_4G_HPUX REFAM_4G_HPUX	RANK OOh-Oeh OOh-Ooh OOh-OOh OOh-OOh	cal Disk New Settin RAID Cap 0 1 1 1	ng 1 <u>A</u> dd pacity[GB] Group 0.1 4.0 4.0 4.0	All S Purpos RPL RPL RPL	D <u>e</u> lete elec <u>t</u> ion
LD Set New Candidate LD List Selection Number OS Type 0000h WN 0001h NX 0002h NX 0003h NX 0004h NX	Delete Link Pa ALL Logical Disk Name XA_NCAAS_0000 REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX	RANK COD-Och OOD-Och OOD-OOD OOD-OOD OOD-OOD OOD-OOD	cal Disk New Settin RAID Cap 0 1 1 1 1 1	ag 1 <u>A</u> dd acity[GB] Group 0.1 4.0 4.0 4.0 4.0	All S Purpos RPL RPL RPL RPL RPL	D <u>e</u> lete elec <u>t</u> ion
LD Set New Candidate LD List Selection Number OS Type 0000h WN 0001h NX 0002h NX 0003h NX 0004h NX 0005h NX	Delete Link Pa ALL Logical Disk Name XA_NCAAS_0000 REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX REFAM_4C_HPUX	RANK COD-Och OOD-Och OOD-OOD OOD-OOD OOD-OOD OOD-OOD OOD-OOD	cal Disk New Settin RAID Cap 0 1 1 1 1 1 1	ag i <u>k</u> dd acity[GB] Group 0.1 4.0 4.0 4.0 4.0 4.0 4.0	All S Purpos RPL RPL RPL RPL RPL RPL	D <u>e</u> lete elec <u>t</u> ion e

Figure 10-25 [AccessControl] Tab Screen

#### (1) Accessible LD List

Consists of a tree view showing the relation between the LD Set and the path information and a list view of the Logical disk List assigned to the LD Set or path information.

#### (a) Tree view

In the tree view, LD Sets can be selected by activating their check boxes and various types of information can be

listed in the list view by clicking tree items.

• In the tree view, LD Sets and path information linked with the LD Sets are displayed.

- : Item that shows all LD Sets
- : LD Set linked with path information
- : LD Set unlinked with path information

The following two icons indicate abnormal settings. If these icons are displayed, it is necessary to change the setting to the normal setting.

- ELD Set in which a port in the WWN mode and a port in the Port mode are mixed
- ED Set in which the assignment of logical disks is different for each path information item
- By clicking right-button after selecting LD Set, the pop-up menu appears allowing selection of name change of LD Set. Selecting the menu displays the LD Set name change screen.
- Check boxes are displayed for the "LD Set" item that shows all LD Sets in the tree item, each LD Set name, and path information linked with the LD Sets in the tree item.

Furthermore, a check box for path information is activated associated with a check box for the linked LD Set.

Check boxes are used for the following purposes:

- Select [Add], [New Setting] logical disks target LD Set
- Select [Link Path] target LD Set
- Select [Delete] target LD Set
- · Select LD Set to [Delete] assigned logical disks

However, when selecting multiple LD Sets simultaneously to [Add]/[Delete] logical disks, the assignment states of logical disks for all the LD Sets must coincide.

When activating the check boxes, display contents of the list view are switched as follows:

- When selecting an LD Set, the list of the logical disks assigned to the selected LD Set is displayed.
- When selecting multiple LD Sets, if the assignment states of logical disks for all the selected LD Sets are the same, the list of logical disks is displayed.
- If the assignment states of logical disks for the selected LD Sets do not coincide, the list of the selected LD Sets is displayed.



#### (b) List view

• Items displayed in the list of logical disks are as follows:

#### LUN

Ore	der in which logic	al disks are recognized by the business server					
LUN	LUN to which logical disks are assigned						
	: LUN to which	logical disks are not assigned					
Numb	er						
OS Ty	pe						
Logica	al Disk Name						
RAID							
Capac	ity						
Purpo	se						
	RPL	Logical disks set in pairs only for replication					
	snapshot	Logical disks with snapshot setting (BV)					
	Link-volume	Logical disks set as a link-volume (LV)					
	RPL/snapshot	Logical disks set in pairs for replication and snapshot setting					
	(Blank)	Ordinary disk with no special purpose settings					
Port (I	Displayed when us	sing a disk array to which "AccessControl (WWN)" is applied)					
	yes	Logical disk assigned to a Port mode port					
	(Blank)	Logical disk which is not assigned to a Port mode port					
	However, the po	ort items are automatically displayed only when a Port mode port exists.					



The logical disk display item order can be changed. For information on the settings, refer to "Client Start/Stop" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with the OS in use.

.....

When LD Sets are not selected by using check boxes in the tree view, the list view is displayed in gray background color and LUN selection is not possible. Furthermore, when LD Sets are selected by using check boxes, the list view is not displayed by clicking the "LD Set" item which shows all the LD Sets or by clicking an individual LD Set.

• When clicking the "LD Set" item which shows all the LD Sets, items displayed in the list of LD Sets are as follows:

#### Platform

: LD Set linked with path information

: LD Set unlinked with path information

The following two icons indicate abnormal settings. If these icons are displayed, it is necessary to change the setting to the normal setting.

**SET** : LD Set in which a port in the WWN mode and a port in the Port mode are mixed

: LD Set in which the assignment of logical disks is different for each path information item LD Set Name

Path Count

Accessible LD List				
E Set	<ul> <li>Platform</li> </ul>	LD Set Name	Path Count	<u> </u>
1	SET A2	test_0306_2	1	
A4:test_0306_1	SET A4	test_0306_1	0	
	SET A2	p6601	2	
	SET A2	- p6602	2	
E CX:CAS	SELCX	- -	0	
CX:NC1111	SET CX	MCIIII	-	
CX:TESTTEST	SET OX	TRETTRET	ů	
CX:test_0306	CT CX	16311631	0	
🗄 🗖 🔛 CX: sune250		test_0306	0	
🗄 🗖 🔛 CX: sunfirel		sune250	2	_
. ⊕ - □ 🕅 CX:sunfire2	🚬 🛛 🔛 CX	sunfirel	2	<u> </u>



• If LD Sets which have different assignment of logical disk are checked, items displayed in the list are as follows:

Platform

: LD Set linked with path information

: LD Set unlinked with path information

The following two icons indicate abnormal settings. If these icons are displayed, it is necessary to change the setting to the normal setting.

EEE : LD Set in which a port in the WWN mode and a port in the Port mode are mixed

ED Set in which the assignment of logical disks is different for each path information item

LD Set Name

Pattern

Accessible LD List					
LD Set		Platform	LD Set Name	Pattern	
		SET CX	test_0306	01	
A4:test_0306_1		SETCX	sune250	02	
🕂 🕀 🗖 🔠 A2:p6601					
±					
CX:CAS					
CX:EC1111					
EX: TEST					
✓ 第1 CX:test_0306					
🕂 🗹 👥 CX: sune250					
🗄 🗖 🔛 CX: sunfirel					
H- <b>□</b> ¶ CX-sunfire2	•				



• If a port in the WWN mode and a port in the Port mode are mixed in a checked LD Set, the display items in the list are as follows:

<Mixed mode list display>

Path (port numbers and names are displayed together.)

Mode

Accessible LD List		
<b>SET</b> LD Set	Path	Mode
	S OOH-OOH (PORT1)	WWN
<b>SEI</b> CX: sune250	B 00h-01h (PORT2)	Port
	FE	
MX:Lserver1_2		
E VINX: WEB SERVER		
00h-00h (PORT1)		
1		· · · · · ·

Figure 10-28 Accessible LD List - Mixed Mode List Display

• If the assignment of logical disks for each path information (port) of a checked LD Set does not match, the display items in the list are as follows:

<Port information list display>

Path (port numbers and names are displayed together.)

Pattern

	- Deck	Detterm	
	Path	Pattern	
E CX:test	00h-00h (PORTO)	01	
Ma OOh-OOh (PORTO)	00h-01h (PORT1)	01	
Och-Olh (PORTI)	01h-00h (PORT2)	01	
Olh-OOh (PORT2)	🔄 01h-01h (PORT3)	02	
Dih-Olh (PORT3)	I'm		
🗄 🗖 🔛 LX: Linux_l			
🗄 🗖 👥 LX: Linux_2			
🗄 🗖 🔛 NX: Next			
	◀		•

Figure 10-29 Accessible LD List - Port Information List Display

• If the assignment of logical disks for each path information (WWPN) of a checked LD Set does not match, the display items in the list are as follows:

<Path information list display> Path

Pattern

SET LD Set	Path	Pattern	
CX:test	1000-B111-1111-1111	01	
1000-В111-1111-1111	🛛 ଯ 1000-C111-1111-1111	01	
1000-C111-1111-1111	1000-D111-1111-1111	01	
□ 1000-D111-1111-1111 □ □ 1000-B111-1111-1111	1000-B111-1111-1111	02	
E. LX: Linux_1			
LX: Linux_2			
- SEI NX: Next			
WN:Windowsl			

Figure 10-30 Accessible LD List - Path Information List

• When the assignment states of logical disks of the check-marked LD Sets for each path information item do not coincide, items displayed in the list are as follows:

<Logical disk list display>

Accessible LD List							
LD Set		LUN	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk Name	RAID	Capacity 🔺
E CX: PISCES/LDSET		💾 0000h	0000h	WN	LD_TEST_002	1	
E CX: REFAMSUN/LDSET		20001h	0001h	WN	LD TEST 001	1	
		0002h	0014h	CX	REFAM/MIX/LD 0000	5	
E INX: A400/LDSET			0015h	сх	REFAM/MIX/LD 0001	5	
HPRP2400/LDSET		UN 0004h	0016b	CX	REFAM/MIX/LD 0002	5	
🗄 🗌 🔛 NX: RP5430/LDSET		UN 0005h	00175	CY	DEENM/MIX/LD 0002	5	
🗄 🗆 🔣 NX: RX2600/LDSET			001/11	CX CV	DEFAN (NIX (ID 0004	-	
🗄 🗆 🚺 WN: DELL_REFAM/LDSET		LUN	00186		KEFAH/HIX/LD_0004	-	
🗄 🗹 🞦 WN: EXP_0889/LDSET		0007h	0019h	CX	REFAM/MIX/LD_0005	5	
🗄 🗆 🔣 WN: EXP_0890/LDSET		0008h	001ah	CX	REFAM/MIX/LD_0006	5	
H- TIM WN-RXP 1246/LDSRT	<b>–</b>						

Figure 10-31 Accessible LD List - Logical Disk List

♨

An LD Set is a virtual concept that shows the aggregate of logical disks bound by the iSM. However, there is a possibility that the assignments of logical disks for each path may not coincide due to communication failures during setting.

Ensure consistency according to the following procedure.

Take a note of a path to which wrong logical disks are assigned (the same characters are displayed for the same contents in the Pattern column). Next, after deleting wrong paths once from the Link Path screen, click the [Get Disk Array Info.] button. Check that the LD Set icon is returned from Red to Blue in the Accessible LD List, restore necessary link paths on the Link Path screen again.

Rebuilding is also possible by assigning logical disks again by using [New Setting].



- Display items can be sorted, but their order cannot be changed.
- LUN to which logical disks are not assigned is made blank.
- When selecting delete target logical disks, one logical disk or multiple logical disks can be simultaneously selected.
- (c) Various Operation Buttons

Operation buttons shown below can be used for logical disks in the Accessible LD List.

Each button is enabled under defined conditions. For details, refer to the explanation of operation.

- Logical Disk [Add] button
- Logical Disk [Delete] button

Furthermore, LD Set related operation buttons shown below can be used regardless of logical disk selection.

- LD Set [New] button
- LD Set [Delete] button
- LD Set [Link Path] button
- Right button after LD Set selection



#### (2) Candidate LD List

This is a list view of logical disks which can be assigned to LD Sets. Selective display is possible by entering keywords in the combo box.

- (a) List view
  - Display items are as follows:

Numb	er	
OS Ty	pe	
Logica	l Disk Nan	ne
RANK	/Pool No. (	The pool number is displayed only on the disk array with pool (in hexadecimal and with four
digits.)	)	
Pool N	ame (displa	ayed only on the disk array with pool.)
RAID		
Capaci	ty	
Group		
Pres	erve	Logical disk assigned to an LD Set
(Bla	nk)	Logical disks in the Preserve Group
Purpos	e	
RPL	,	Logical disks set in pairs only for replication
snap	shot	Logical disks with snapshot setting (BV)
Link	-volume	Logical disks set as link-volume (LV)
RPL	/snapshot	Logical disks set in pairs for replication and snapshot setting
(Bla	nk)	Ordinary disk with no special purpose settings
Port (I	Displayed w	hen using a disk array to which "AccessControl(WWN)" is applied)
yes		Logical disk assigned to a port mode port
(Bla	nk)	Logical disk which is not assigned to a port mode port
How	ever, the p	ort items are automatically displayed only when a Port mode port exists.



The logical disk display item order can be changed. For information on the settings, refer to "Client Start/Stop" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance with the OS in use.



- Display items can be sorted, but their order cannot be changed.
- Logical disks assigned to LD Sets are also displayed.
- When selecting logical disks which are to be assigned to business, one logical disk or multiple logical disks can be simultaneously selected.

(b) Display Selection Combo Box

Using the following keywords makes it possible to narrow down the display of logical disks in the [Candidate LD List].

Selection Information	Display of Logical Disks
"LD Set Name" (Ex. "NX:UNIX_Server01")	Displays only logical disks which have already been assigned to the LD Set
"Platform: *" (Ex. "NX: *")	Displays only logical disks of the Platform
" * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	Displays only logical disks whose Platform has not been set
"**h-**h (*)" (Ex. "04h-00h (Server01)")	Displays only logical disks that are assigned to ports in the Port mode.
"Preserve Group"	Displays logical disks in the Preserve Group. Target logical disks include logical disks with no special purpose settings, logical disks set in pairs for replication, logical disks for snapshots (BV only displayed. SV and SDV are not displayed), and logical disks set as link-volume.
"ALL"	Displays all logical disks in the [Candidate LD List]. (Default settings)

#### (c) Various Operation Buttons

Operation buttons shown below can be used for logical disks in the [Candidate LD List].

Each button is enabled under defined conditions. For details, refer to the explanation of operation.

- Logical Disk [Add] button
- Logical Disk [New Setting] button
- All Selection check box

Furthermore, LD Set related operation buttons shown below can be used regardless of logical disk selection.

- LD Set [New] button
- LD Set [Delete] button
- LD Set [Link Path] button
- Right button after LD Set selection

	X:HPRP2400	D/LDSET	▲ LUN	Number	OS Type	Logical Disk	Name	RAID	Capacity[G
	X:RP5430/1	LDSET	000	0h 0000h	WN	XA_NCAAS_000	)0	0	0
	X:RX2600/1	LDSET	000	lh 0121h	WN	XiAn_Client_	0121	0	0
$\pm$ $\square$									
	W-12016_2, W-12016_3	LDSEI /LDSET							
	N:DELL REI	FAM/LDSET							
	1000-000	0-C939-D7E6							
🕂 🗆 🛄 🛄	N: EXP_0889	9/LDSET							
🗄 🗆 🗖 🖽 🖽	N: EXP_0890	D/LDSET							
∰ <b>□ <u>(</u>11) m</b>	N-SHRRK/LI	OSRT	┚						
LD Set					cal Disk-				
Ne <u>w</u>	I	Delete	Link <u>P</u> at!	h 1	New Setti:	ng 1,	<u>¥</u> dd		D <u>e</u> lete
Ne <u>w</u> Candidate	LD List	<u></u> elete	Link <u>P</u> atl	h 1	New Setti:	ng 1.	<u>ष्</u> रतव		D <u>e</u> lete
Candidate	LD List-	<u>elete</u>	Link <u>P</u> at	h	New Setti:	ng 1.	<u>¥</u> dd	_ <b>L</b> _	D <u>e</u> lete
Ne <u>w</u> Candidate Se <u>l</u> ection	LD List-	Delete ALL	Link <u>P</u> atl	h	New Setti:	n <u>a</u> []	<u>₹</u> dd		D <u>e</u> lete
New Candidate Selection Number	LD List- n OS Type	Delete	Link <u>P</u> at: isk Name		New Setti:	ng 1 .	<u>k</u> dd [ oup	All S	D <u>e</u> lete Selec <u>t</u> ion
New Candidate Selection Number	LD List - a OS Type WN	ALL Logical D: XA_NCAAS_C	Link <u>P</u> at isk Name	RANK 00h-0eh	New Setti: RAID Car 0	ng Î ; pacity[GB] Gr 0.1	Add [	All S	D <u>e</u> lete
New Candidate Selection Number 0000h	LD List- a OS Type WN NX	ALL Logical D: XA_NCAAS_( REFAM_4C_F	Link Pat isk Name 0000 HPUX	RANK OOh-Oeh OOh-OOh	New Setti: RAID Cap 0 1	ng 1 .	Add [	All S Purpos RPL	D <u>e</u> lete
New Candidate Selection Number 0000h 0001h 0002h	LD List	ALL Logical Di XA_NCAAS_( REFAM_4C_F REFAM_4C_F	Link Pat sk Name 0000 HPUX HPUX	RANK OOh-Oeh OOh-Ooh OOh-OOh	New Setti: RAID Cap 0 1 1	ng Î	Add [	All S Purpos RPL RPL	D <u>e</u> lete
New Candidate Selection Number 0000h 0001h 0002h 0002h	LD List a OS Type WN NX NX NX	ALL Logical Di XA_NCAAS_( REFAM_4G_F REFAM_4G_F REFAM_4G_F	Link Pat: isk Name 0000 HPUX HPUX	RANK 00h-0eh 00h-00h 00h-00h 00h-00h	New Setti: RAID Cap 0 1 1	ng Î	<u>k</u> dd ∫ oup	All S Purpos RPL RPL RPL RPL	D <u>e</u> lete
New Candidate Selection Number 0000h 0001h 0002h 0003h 0003h	LD List a OS Type WN NX NX NX NX	ALL Logical Di XA_NCAAS_C REFAM_4C_F REFAM_4C_F REFAM_4C_F REFAM_4C_F	Link Pat: sk Name 0000 HPUX HPUX HPUX	RANK 00h-0eh 00h-00h 00h-00h 00h-00h 00h-00h	New Setti: RAID Cap 0 1 1 1 1	ng Î	<u>k</u> dd ∫ oup	All S Purpos RPL RPL RPL RPL RPL	D <u>e</u> lete
New Candidate Selection Number 0000h 0001h 0002h 0003h 0003h	LD List	ALL Logical Di XA_NCAAS_( REFAM_4G_H REFAM_4G_H REFAM_4G_H REFAM_4G_H REFAM_4G_H	Link <u>P</u> at: 	RANK           00h-0eh           00h-00h           00h-00h           00h-00h           00h-00h           00h-00h           00h-00h           00h-00h           00h-00h	New Setti: RAID Cap 0 1 1 1 1 1	ng 1	<u>&amp;</u> dd Γ	All S Purpos RPL RPL RPL RPL RPL RPL	D <u>e</u> lete

Perform individual operations for LD Sets on the following screen

Figure 10-32 [AccessControl] Tab Screen

#### (3) [Get Disk Array Info.] button

Clicking this button will re-acquire information from the disk array necessary for operations on the AccessControl screen.

Normally, it is not necessary to use this button to re-acquire information from the disk array. If operations for the disk array on this screen fail, causing inconsistency between the disk array setting information and the information administrated on the iSM client and making normal operation impossible, use this button.

After clicking this button and while information is being acquired from the disk array, the following dialog screen will be displayed.

	1
	1
Cancel	

Figure 10-33 Information Being Acquired

When canceling the acquisition of information by clicking the [Cancel] button while the information is being acquired, or the acquisition of information fails, there is a possibility that disk array information administrated by the iSM client may be wrong. Therefore, re-acquire information from the disk array through [Get Disk Array Info.].

#### (4) [All Selection] check box

This check box is used to perform auxiliary operation to select logical disks from the [Candidate LD List] display area.

This check box enables the auxiliary selection operation as shown below.

· Activate the check box

Selects all logical disks displayed in the [Candidate LD List].

Deactivate the check box

Unselect logical disks currently selected and displayed in the [Candidate LD List].



# 10.5.2 Access Control Start/Mode Change Screen

Items that can be set on the [Setting/Reference] tab screen are as follows:

- Setting Access Control
- Product Information (reference only)

Contents of each item and setting information are described below.

🚰 AccessControl- [Setting Mode]	K
AccessControl Setting/Reference	
Setting Access Control Change Port Mode Start Access Control	Product Information Purchase Product Classification NEC Storage AccessControl(16 connections) Product Use Situation 9 / (16 connections)
Get Disk Array Info.	Close <u>H</u> elp

Figure 10-34 [Setting/Reference] Tab Screen

#### (1) "Setting Access Control" field

The following setting can be performed in this field.

- Change Port Mode
- Start Access Control

#### (2) "Product Information" field

This field displays information on the AccessControl product required for setting information on accessibility to logical disks.

- Purchase Product Classification: Displays the type of the purchased AccessControl product.
- Product Use Situation: Displays the maximum number of path information links permitted for the AccessControl product and the current number of path information links.



### 10.5.3 Access Control Setting Confirmation Screen

.....

Starting Access Control in setting mode displays the following warning dialog box to warn the users:



Figure 10-35 Warning Dialog Box at Start

Clicking the [Cancel] button in the warning dialog box at start returns to the Configuration- [Setting Mode] screen below.


Configuration [Cotting Mode]	
connguration-[Setting Mode]	
-Disk Array Subsystem Information-	
Disk Arrav Name : Storage2300/0244	
Product ID : S2300 Disk Array	•
Serial Number : 0000000927900244	
Batch Setting	More than one LD in the Dick Array Subsystem can
	be bound collectively.
<u>ED Bind</u>	Please use it at the time of initial installation
	and so on.
Setting <u>N</u> ickname	More than one LD or Disk Array Subsystem can be renamed collectively.
Replication Setting	Setting about replication can be done
	_ correctively.
-Individual Setting/Reference	
	LD can be bound or unbound individually.
<u></u> D Bind/Unbind	
	Warious settings of Disk Array Subsystem can be
Setting <u>D</u> isk Array	executed.
	-
Setting Access Control	According to the AccessControl from the Business Server the access propriety information to the
	LD can be set up.
	Set about the Cache Partitioning Function. This
Setting <u>C</u> ache Segment	function can divide a cache memory into a
	segment, and can restrict the amount of cache memory occupancy for every business
Get Configuration	Present LD composition and present Disk Array
Get Configuration Setting Info	setting information are gotten, and it is saved
	⊣at a file.
	Close Help

Figure 10-36 Configuration- [Setting Mode] Screen

Similarly, the following dialog boxes also display a warning message when an attempt is made to perform operation: [05317], [05318], [05325], [05326], [05327], [05373], [05384], and [05385]

iSM		X
⚠	[05325] LD 5et is deleted.	
	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	
	*There is a case where it becomes impossible for a LD to recognize suddenly from a Business Server.	
	*The data mismatching by being cash un-reflected on a Business Server may occur.	
	*The data in LD may be damaged.	
	*****	
	OK Cancel	

Figure 10-37 Sample of Warning Message Display



Download from Www.Somanuals.com. All Manuals Search And Download.

For any operation which displays this warning dialog, a message appears to ask you whether you really want to make setting changes to the disk array.



Figure 10-38 Confirmation Message



# Appendix A Specifications

### Specified Number of Disk Arrays to Be A.1 Set

At most one disk array can be set from the iSM client simultaneously (not including LD Batch Binding and Pair Batch Setting).

### Number of LD Sets Locatable in One A.2 Disk Array

Table A-1 shows the maximum number of LD Sets locatable in one disk array.

Table A-1 Max. No. of LD Sets Locatable in One Disk Alray		
Disk Array Series	Max. No. of LD Sets*	
1000 series	128	
2000 series	128	
3000 series	256	
4000 series	256	

Table A. 1. Max No. of I.D. Sets Locatable in One Disk Array

\* Calculate the number of new LD Sets you can create by subtracting the number of LD Sets with no path specified and the number of paths linked with LD Sets from the maximum number of LD Sets locatable.

### Specified Number of Paths to Be Set for A.3 LD Set

At most 64 paths can be set for a LD Set.

# A.4 Number of LDs Locatable in One LD Set

Table A-2 shows the maximum number of LDs and LUNs locatable in one LD Set.

Access Control	License Required	Access Mode	Disk Array	Max. No. of Locatable LDs	Specifiable LUN
ON	AccessControl	Port mode	1000/2000 series	1024	0000h to 03ffh
(WWN)	(to be set by maintenance personnel)	3000/4000 series	4096	0000h to 0fffh	
	AccessControl	WWN mode	100/1000/2000 series	512	0000h to 01ffh
Pe m Pe A be pe		3000/4000 series	512	0000h to 01ffh	
	Port mode, WWN mode	100/1000/2000/2800 series	512	0000h to 01ffh	
		3000/4000 series	512	0000h to 01ffh	
	Port mode for ACOS-4 resources (to be set by maintenance personnel)	2000 series	1024	0000h to 03ffh	
		4000 series	4096	0000h to 0fffh	
OFF	None None	None	100/1000/2000/2800 series	1024	0000h to 03ffh
			3000/4000 series	4096	0000h to 0fffh

 Table A-2
 Specifications for LDs Locatable When Access Control Is ON

Note: The number of LDs you can actually use depends on the operating system on the business server.

# A.5 Notes on Binding a Pool

Although you can bind dynamic pools with up to 120 physical disks on S2400 disk array and up to 240 physical disks on S2800 disk array, you can use up to 60 physical disks when you bind a pool. Thus, to use 61 or more physical disks, you need to expand dynamic pools by adding physical disks.

In addition, when you expand a dynamic pool, you can add up to 60 physical disks at a time.

# Appendix B Configuration Setting Command

This chapter explains how to operate the configuration setup command that is performed through the Command Line Interface (CLI) from the iSM server.

# B.1 Network Relief Setting Command (iSMnetconf)

The iSMnetconf command sets the IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway Address of a target disk array's Service Processor, limits permission for access from the monitoring server, and refers to the information. The iSMnetconf command operates on a host that is connected with the disk array through FC. Make Service Processor settings for general operation through iSM client's configuration setting (GUI), 9.3 "Network". Use the iSMnetconf command if monitoring via the Ether path is disabled due to wrong operation or the like. The iSMnetconf command is installed at the same time the "Storage Manager Volume List", "ReplicationControl", or "SnapControl" is installed.

# B.2 Start and Stop of Network Relief Setting Command

### (1) Start of the iSMnetconf command

To start the command, enter iSMnetconf in the command line. If options are omitted, the program version and the usage are displayed as shown below.

iSMnetconf Version x.x		
Usage : iSMnetconf	{-arrayname <array name="">   -specialfile <special file="">}</special></array>	
	[-number <resource number="">]</resource>	
	{[-ipaddress <ip address="">]   [-subnetmask <subnet mask="">]  </subnet></ip>	
	[-gateway <gateway address="">]  </gateway>	
	[-addscsivalidaddress <add address="">]  </add>	
	[-chgscsivalidaddress <original address=""> <change address="">]</change></original>	
	[-delscsivalidaddress < Delete Address>]	
	[-scsiguardinvalid {on   off}]}	
	[-ipcheckinvalid {on   off}] [-force]	
iSMnetconf	{-arrayname < Array Name>   -specialfile <special file="">}</special>	
	[-number <resource number="">] -view</resource>	
iSMnetconf	-file <file name=""> [-ipcheckinvalid {on   off}] [-force]</file>	

\* The above is a display sample. The actual program version is displayed for Version.

#### (2) iSMnetconf command options

The following explains the functions of the iSMnetconf command and the corresponding options:

-addscsivalidaddress option:

Adds the IP address of the monitoring server for which access is permitted. The IP address added with this option takes effect when the access restriction function is enabled (scsiguardinvalid is off). Up to eight of this option, including the chgscsivalidaddress and delscsivalidaddress options, can be specified simultaneously. The total number of IP addresses that can be added per disk array is 8 when SCSI Socket Valid IP addresses, SNMP Trap Transmission IP addresses, and SNMP Valid IP addresses are all combined.

-arrayname option:	Specifies the name of the target disk array.
	Since the relationship between the disk array name and
	the special file name (UNIX version) or disk number
	(Windows version) is obtained from the "volume
	information data", it is necessary to confirm that the
	"volume information data" has been updated to the
	latest version. For information on how to update the
	"volume information data", refer to "volume list
	command" in the "User's Manual" or "User's Manual
	(UNIX)" in accordance with the OS in use
-chosesivalidaddress ontion	Changes the IP address of the monitoring server for
engoest variadadess option.	which access is permitted The IP address changed
	with this option takes effect when the access
	restriction function is enabled (sestimated and is off)
	Un to eight of this ontion, including the
	addscsivalidaddress and delssivalidaddress options
	can be specified simultaneously
-delsesivalidaddress option	Deletes the IP address of the monitoring server for
-ucisesivanuautiess option.	which access is permitted. The IP address changed
	with this option takes offset when the access
	restriction function is apphled (assigned involid is off)
	Up to eight of this option including the
	Op to eight of this option, including the
	addscstvalidaddress and engsestvalidaddress options,
C1	De de the Chercherine the estimate a lest et de series
-me option:	Reads the file storing the settings and sets the service
	processor. The settings can be made for multiple
	disk arrays simultaneously.
-force option:	Forcibly makes settings even during configuration
	setting by another configuration setup command.
-gateway option:	Sets a Gateway Address. Specify the Gateway
	Address in the input format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" (in
	decimal).
-ipaddress option:	Sets the IP Address of the target disk array. Specify
	the IP Address in the input format of
	"aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" (in decimal).
-ipcheckinvalid option:	Enables the omission of a check on if the IP Address
	specified in the ipaddress option is already used by
	another network equipment. The option also enables
	the omission of a check conducted to see whether any
	of the IP addresses specified with the ipaddress,
	subnetmask, gateway, addscsivalidaddress,

	chgscsivalidaddress, and delscsivalidaddress options is
	invalid.
-number option:	Specifies the target Service Processor number.
-scsiguardinvalid option:	Determines whether to validate/invalidate the limit for
	access from monitoring servers connected through
	Ether. If "off" is specified, the limit for access from
	monitoring servers becomes valid, and only
	monitoring servers at registered IP Addresses are
	permitted to make access. If "on" is specified, the
	limit for access from monitoring servers becomes
	invalid, and monitoring servers at any IP Addresses
	are permitted to make access. Therefore, be careful
	in specifying "on" for this option.
-specialfile option:	Specifies the special file name of the target disk array.
	The special file name is displayed by the "volume list
	command". For details on the command, refer to the
	"volume list command" explained in the "User's
	Manual" or "User's Manual (UNIX)" in accordance
	with the OS in use.
-subnetmask option:	Sets a Subnet Mask. Specify the Subnet Mask in the
	input format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" (in decimal). The
	subnet of the disk array's IP Address is set by
	specifying this option.
-view option:	Displays Service Processor information. If a Service
	Processor number is specified in the "number" option,
	the information of only the specified Service Processor
	is displayed. If the "number" option is omitted, the
	information of all the Service Processors is displayed.

#### (3) Termination of the iSMnetconf command

When the iSMnetconf command terminates normally, a message is displayed indicating successful operation if a setting option is specified. If a reference option is specified, the item for the option is displayed.

# **B.2.1 Example of Displaying Options**

#### (1) Setting of a Service Processor

The following shows the setting of the Service Processor of a target disk array.

>iSMnetconf -arrayname Storage2300 -number 00h -ipaddress 192.168.0.1 -scsiguardinvalid off

iSMnetconf 001 : Command Complete Successfully.

#### (2) Reference to various types of Service Processor information

The following shows reference to various types of Service Processor information of a target disk array. If the -number option is omitted, the information of all the Service Processors in the target disk array is displayed.

>iSMnetconf -arrayname Storage2300 -number 00h -view		
Service Processor Infor	rmation (a)	
Number(h): 00		
State : ready		
Disk Array TCP/IP Inf	ormation (b)	
IP Address : 192.16	58.0.1	
Subnet Mask : 255.2	55.255.0	
Gateway Address : 192.16	58.0.254	
SCSI Socket Information (c)		
SCSI Socket Guard Invali	d : off	
SCSI Socket Valid IP Add	lress : 192.168.0.5	
SNMP Information	(d)	
Community Name	: public	
SNMP Trap Transmission	IP Address : 192.168.0.5	
	: 192.168.0.6	
SNMP Valid	: off	
SNMP Valid IP Address	: 192.168.0.5	
	: 192.168.0.7	
Trap Information	(e)	
Trap Sense Interval	: 5 second(s)	
Hait Constant		

Unit Name	: Storage2300
Unit Location	: Fuchu-shi
Unit Info	: Setting Date 2003/01/01

The display items are as follows:

### (a) Service Processor Information Displays the information of a target Service Processor. Number(h): Service Processor number State: Service Processor state (b) Disk Array TCP/IP Information Displays the TCP/IP information of a target disk array. IP Address: IP Address of the disk array Subnet Mask: Subnet Mask of the disk array Gateway Address: Gateway Address of the disk array (c) SCSI Socket Information Displays the information of monitoring servers. SCSI Socket Guard Invalid: Indicates that the limit for access from monitoring servers connected through Ether is valid/invalid. on: The limit for access from monitoring servers connected through Ether becomes invalid, and monitoring servers at any IP Addresses are permitted to make access. off: The limit for access from monitoring servers connected through Ether becomes valid, and only monitoring servers at registered IP Addresses are permitted to make access. SCSI Socket Valid IP Address: IP Address of a monitoring server that is permitted to make access. "---" is displayed if no IP Addresses are registered.

### (d) SNMP Information

Displays the SNMP-related information

Community Name:	Displays the community name.	
SNMP Trap Transmission IP Address:	IP address to which trap messages are to be	
	transmitted. If no IP address is registered, "" is	
	displayed.	
SNMP Valid:	Indicates whether the SNMP request restriction is	
	valid or invalid.	
	on: The SNMP request restriction is invalid,	
	accepting SNMP requests from any host.	
	off: The SNMP request restriction is valid,	
	accepting SNMP requests only from registered	
	hosts.	
SNMP Valid IP Address:	IP address from which SNMP requests are accepted.	
	If no IP address is registered, "" is displayed.	

### (e) Trap Information

Displays the trap-related information.

Trap Sense Interval:	Displays the SNMP trap sense interval.
Unit Contact:	Displays the management information transmitted in
	the SNMP trap.
Unit Name:	Displays the system name transmitted in the SNMP
	trap.
Unit Location:	Displays the installation location information
	transmitted in the SNMP trap.
Unit Info:	Displays the other information transmitted in the
	SNMP trap.

## **B.2.2 Setting File**

#### (1) File header

When the following identifier line is written at the beginning of a file, that file can be identified as the setting file of this command.

# iSMnetconf Configuration File Version x.x.

### (2) Sections and items

In the setting file, specify parameters using sections and items.

• [Target Disk Array] section

Specify the disk array and service processor number to be set. This section is always required.

array name item:	Specify the disk array name.
special file item:	Specify the special file name (UNIX version) or disk
	number (Windows version).
number item:	Specify the service processor number.

• [Disk Array TCP/IP Information] section Specify the network-related items for the disk array.

ip address item:	Specify the IP address of the disk array.
subnet mask item:	Specify the subnet mask of the disk array.
gateway address:	Specify the gateway address of the disk array.

• [SCSI Socket Information] section Specify the items related to the restriction of access from the monitoring server.

scsi socket guard invalid item:	Specify whether the restriction of access from the
	monitoring server is valid or invalid.
scsi valid address item:	Specify the IP address of the monitoring server for which
	access is permitted.

#### (3) Example of the setting file

An example of the setting file is shown below.

# iSMnetconf Configuration File Version x.x
[Target Disk Array]
array name = Storage2300
number = 00h
[Disk Array TCP/IP Information]
ip address = 192.168.0.1
subnet mask = 255.255.255.0
gateway address = 192.168.0.254
[SCSI Socket Information]
scsi guard invalid = off
scsi valid address = 192.168.0.5

### (4) Notes

- A line beginning with "#" is treated as a comment.
- Space and horizontal tab characters are ignored.
- It is necessary to specify either the array name item or special file item in the [Target Disk Array] section. If neither or both of them are specified, an error occurs.
- When the target disk array has only one service processor, the number item can be omitted.
- Up to eight scsi valid address items can be specified simultaneously.
- When more than one scsi valid address item is specified, only the IP addresses that are specified with this option are registered as IP addresses for which access is permitted.
- It is necessary to specify the sections and items in the order shown in (2) "Sections and items".
- By repeating the sequence of sections and items, beginning with the [Target Disk Array] section, more than one disk array can be specified as the setting target.

# Appendix C RAID

# C.1 RAID

The word RAID was first introduced in the thesis "A Case for Redundant Arrays of Inexpensive Disks" released by professors of the University of California at Berkeley of the U.S.A. in 1987.

The initials RAID of "Redundant Arrays of Inexpensive Disks" mean literally "a set of redundant and inexpensive disks". However, RAID has been generally explained with "Inexpensive" replaced by "Independent" in these days. Large-capacity hard disks were very expensive at that time, but I/O performance was not high enough for the costs. Disk access was a bottleneck in system performance. RAID was created for the following purposes:

- · Reducing costs by using inexpensive small-capacity disks
- · Improving performance by concurrently accessing multiple disks
- · Increasing reliability by adding redundant data

RAID levels 1 to 5 are defined in the thesis mentioned above. However, the table below shows the features of RAID0 (striping), RAID1, RAID5, RAID10, RAID50, and RAID6 only. RAID0 (striping) has no redundancy and does not satisfy all requirements for RAID, but it is in wide use. RAID10 is a combination of RAID0 and RAID1. RAID50 is a combination of RAID0 and RAID5. RAID6 can keep redundancy by its double-parity feature even if one physical disk becomes faulty.

Each RAID number is used simply to sort out data division methods or repair methods, and the RAID numbers do not indicate any priority.

RAID Level	Redundancy	Required Number of PDs	Decrease in Capacity	Advantage	Disadvantage	
RAID 0	None	$\frac{1 \text{ or }}{\text{more}}^{*1,*3}$	None	Quick access	Inaccessible when even a single disk fails	
RAID 1	Dual configuration	2	50%	High reliability No performance deterioration in reduced state	Costly	
RAID 5	Parity	3 or more *4	Equivalent to capacity of 1 disk	Concurrent processing for multiple R/W commands	Parity data read required for writing Performance deterioration in reduced state	
RAID6	Double parity	6 or more <sup>*5</sup>	Equivalent to capacity of 2/6 or 2/10 disks	The most reliable (redundancy secured on a failure of one physical disk)	It is necessary to read parity when writing data. The accessibility to data drops on degradation.	
RAID10	Dual configuration	4 or more *2, *6	50%	Quick access High reliability No performance deterioration in reduced state	Costly	
RAID50	Parity	10 or more <sup>*7</sup>	Equivalent to capacity of 1/5 disks	Concurrent processing for multiple R/W commands Quick access	It is necessary to read parity when writing data. The accessibility to data drops on degradation.	

\*1: 100/1000/2000 series disk array: 1, 3, 5, 10, or 15 disks

\*2: 100/1000/2000 series disk array: 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, or 14 disks

- \*3: S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array: Not available for configuration
- \*4: S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array: 5 disks
- \*5: S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array: 6 or more disks (4+PQ) and 10 or more (8+PQ)
- \*6: S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array: 4, 8, or 16 disks
- \*7: S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array: 10 or 20 disks

### (1) RAID0



This method slices data (send from the host) in a striping size and distributes the data to the physical disks of the RAID.

If processing is performed concurrently for the physical disks of the RAID, the data transfer time is reduced to 1/(number of PDs) and data can be accessed quickly. Since RAID0 has no redundant data, 100% of the disk capacity is available. However, data cannot be accessed when even a single disk fails.

#### <Advantage>

- Quick access
- Highest availability of the disk capacity
- <Disadvantage>

- RAID0 has no redundant data. Thus, it is inaccessible when even a single disk fails.
- Since more than one physical disk is used, reliability becomes 1/number of PDs.

Since RAID0 has no redundancy, all the data is lost when even a single disk fails. iSM does not recommend RAID0. Use another RAID configuration.

### (2) RAID1



This method writes data (sent from the host) onto two disks (or into 2 disk groups). (Mirroring)

RAID1 has the same data in dual configuration. Thus, even if one disk fails, the other disk enables access to the data.

In comparison with a single disk, RAID1 achieves the equivalent performance in write operation, and up to the double throughput as performance in read operation by accessing two disks containing the same data.

RAID1 offers data reliability higher than any other RAIDs do, but redundant data takes up 50% of the disk capacity.

### <Advantage>

- · High reliability
- No performance deterioration when a single disk fails
- Performance in read operation can be up to twice as high as the throughput of a single disk.

#### <Disadvantage>

• Redundant data takes up a half of the disk capacity.





This method slices data (sent from the host) in certain striping size and distributes the data to the physical disks of the RAID. It also distributes the parity data to the disks.

Since RAID5 distributes parity data to multiple disks, it enables concurrent processing at disk access. Thus, RAID5 is suitable for processing which often makes random access to small files in size of several kilobytes.

Even if one of the disks fails, access can be made to the parity data. However, performance in read operation lowers in this case.

<Advantage>

- Concurrent processing by using distributed parity data
- · Availability of processing which often makes random access

<Disadvantage>

• If one of the physical disks constituting logical disks fails, performance in read operation lowers.

#### (4) RAID6



This method slices data sent from the host in certain striping size and distributes the slices into the physical disks of the RAID. While doing that, it generates two parity data per block and distributes the respective parities into the disks.

RAID6 supports double parity, therefore it secures redundancy even if one disk becomes faulty and also ensures accessibility even if two disks become faulty. However, the capability for reading data degrades in case of a disk failure.

In addition to that, RAID6 distributes parity data to multiple disks, it enables concurrent processing for access to the disks. Thus, RAID6 is suitable for random access to small files in size of several kilobytes.

#### <Advantage>

- Redundancy secured if one physical disk becomes faulty, and high reliability and availability if two disks become faulty.
- Concurrent processing by using distributed parities
- Suitable for random access

#### <Disadvantage>

• If two physical disks used for the logical disks fail, the capability for reading data degrades.

#### (5) RAID10



This method slices data (sent from the host) and distributes (RAID0) the data to pairs of mirrored disks (RAID1).

Since RAID10 distributes data to multiple disks, it enables concurrent processing and makes quick access. In addition, it has the same data in dual configuration. Even if one of the disks fails, the other disk enables access to the data.

Reliability is about 1/n (n: number of paired sets of RAID1 disks) of RAID1 consisting of two disks. Reliability is lower than that of a single RAID1, but it is still high enough.

#### <Advantage>

- High reliability
- · Quick access
- No performance deterioration when a single disk fails

#### <Disadvantage>

• Redundant data takes up a half of the disk capacity.

### (6) RAID50



This method, based on RAID0, slices data sent from the host and distributes the slices into multiple sets of RAID5 physical disks.

Since RAID50 distributes data to multiple sets of RAID5 disks, it enables further concurrent processing and provides quicker access.

#### <Advantage>

- Concurrent processing for multiple R/W commands
- Quick access
- <Disadvantage>
- If one of the physical disks constituting logical disks fails, performance in read operation lowers.

### C.2 List of RANK-Configurable RAID Types ....

The table below shows the number of physical disks and the number of RANKs available by the RAID type on the 100/1000/2000 series (not including S400/S1400/S2400).

			Number of Physical Disks													
RAID Type	Disk Array	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
RAID0	100/1000/2000	0	-	0	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0
RAID1	series	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
RAID5		-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
RAID10		-	-	-	0	-	0	-	0	-	0	-	0	-	0	-

O: Available -: Unavailable

# C.3 List of Pool-Configurable RAID Types

The tables below show the number of physical disks and the number of pools available by the RAID type on S400/S1400/S2400/S2800.

....

Basic pool											
	Diale Armore	Number of Physical Disks									
RAID Type	DISK AITay	2	4	5	8	10	16	20			
RAID1	S400/S1400/	0	-	-	-	-	-	-			
RAID5	S2400/S2800	-	-	0	-	-	-	-			
RAID10		-	0	-	0	-	0	-			
RAID50		-	-	-	-	0	-	0			

O: Available -: Unavailable

• Dynamic pool

RAID Type	Disk Array	Number of Physical Disks
RAID6 (4+PQ)	S400/S1400/	6 to 60
	S2400/S2800	(120 or 240)*1
RAID6 (8+PQ)		10 to 60
		(120 or 240)*1

\*1: The maximum number of physical disks is 60 when pools are in use.

To use 61 or more physical disks, you need to add physical disks by extending dynamic pools.

# Appendix D Notes on Use for Data Replication

# D.1 Notes on Binding Logical Disks

#### (1) \$400/\$1400/\$2400/\$2800

S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array allows the user or the system engineer to bind logical disks.

- 1. Specify the capacity of one logical disk in units of 1 GB\*1.
- Now you can select a recommended capacity (already used in the 3000/4000 series disk array) from a pull-down list.

The table below shows the recommended capacities. (A logical disk's capacity smaller than 0.1 GB\*1 is shown rounded\*2 on the configuration setting summary display.):

View on iSM	Logical disk capacity (including control region)
2.0 GB	2128 MB
4.1 GB	4256 MB
8.3 GB	8512 MB
16.6 GB	17024 MB
33.2 GB	34048 MB
66.4 GB	68096 MB
132.9 GB	136190 MB
162.0 GB	165984 MB
265.9 GB	272384 MB
531.9 GB	544768 MB
1063.9 GB	1089536 MB

- On S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 disk array, you can bind logical disks of the same capacity regardless of pool type and RAID configuration. (On the 100/1000/2000 series disk array (not including S400/S1400/S2400), capacities of logical disks you can use are different depending on the RAID configuration.)
- 4. The real capacity of each logical disk includes additional 2 MB region for disk control, which makes it available for the user. On S400/S1400/S2400/S2800, binding a pool may cause the capacity assigned to a pool (pool used capacity) to exceed the capacity of the logical disks.
- \*1: iSM handles 1024 KB as 1 MB.

\*2: When the total capacity of logical disks is less than 0.1 GB, it is represented as 0.1 GB.

#### (2) S series (not including S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 and 3000/4000 series)

The user or the system engineer can bind logical disks of the disk arrays (except for S400/S1400/S2400/S2800 and 3000/4000 series). The capacities of logical disks to be bound vary depending on the RAID configuration.

If you want to bind logical disks which are to be used with DataReplication, the disks to be paired must have the same capacity. If having purchased or planning to purchase the products such as DataReplication, keep in mind that the following assists in easily updating the system configuration later:

- · Binding logical disks having the same capacity
- Selecting RAID configuration in which logical disks having the same capacity are easy to be bound

iSM can also bind logical disks through the CLI (Command Line Interface). However use of GUI is recommended. This appendix mainly explains how to bind logical disks through the GUI. If use of DataReplication is not for binding logical disks, read the description of "RV"<sup>\*1</sup> as "logical disks having the same capacity" in the explanation below.

A logical disk's capacity smaller than 0.1GB<sup>\*2</sup> is shown rounded on the configuration setting summary display<sup>\*3</sup>. Note that different capacities may appear to be identical.

- \*1: RV (Replication Volume) is a copy volume in using DataReplication.
- \*2: iSM processes data with 1MB = 1024KB.
- \*3: When the total capacity of logical disks is less than 0.1 GB, it is represented as 0.1 GB.

. . . . . . .

# D.2 Recommended RAID Configuration

Table D-1 shows RAID configurations recommended if you want to get logical disks to have the same capacity when using DataReplication.

	RV	RAID1	RAID5	RAID5	RAID5	RAID5
MV		(1+1)*1	$(4+P)^{*1}$	$(6+P)^{*1}$	(8+P) <sup>*1</sup>	$(2+P)^{*2}$
RAID1(1+1)		۲	۲	-	۲	۲
RAID5(4+P)	≻ <sup>*1</sup>	۲	۲	-	۲	۲
RAID5(6+P)		_	_	۲	_	_
RAID5(8+P)		۲	۲	_	۲	۲
RAID5(2+P) *2		۲	۲	_	۲	۲

Table D-1 Recommended Combinations of RAID Configurations

\*1: Can be specified through both Batch Setting and Individual Setting.

\*2: Can be specified through only Individual Setting.

#### [How to read the table]

The table shows RAID configurations in which RV having the same capacity as for MV can be bound. The symbols in the table are as follows:

- $\odot$ : RV can be bound.
- -: RV (= a logical disk having the same capacity as for MV) may not be bound if the RAID configurations of RV and MV are different.

#### [Supplementary information]

If operating logical disks in a configuration other than the above, bind the logical disks in combination of RAIDs in which RV can be bound. Refer to D.3 "Capacity Except Recommended RAID Configuration" for details.

## D.3 Capacity Except Recommended RAID Configuration

## D.3.1 Concept of Logical Disk Bind Capacity

This section explains disk array specifications and software specifications, according to which the capacities of logical disks of this disk array series are to be determined. The section mainly explains the capacities of logical disks which are to be bound in a non-recommended RAID configuration. Use "Individual Setting" of Configuration Setting (GUI) to bind logical disks in a non-recommended RAID configuration.

(1) Disk array specifications

This disk array series requires that the capacity of a logical disk of the RAID type (RAID0, RAID10, or RAID5) using the striping feature is a multiple of "striping size × number of data disks\*".

The striping size for of this disk array series is defined as 128KB. Thus, "128KB × number of data disks" is the capacity unit of logical disks to be bound, as shown in Figure D-1.



Physical Disks

Figure D-1 Capacity Unit in Binding

\*: A data disk is a physical disk, which is used to save data in RAID configuration. The number of data disks is 1 in configuration of RAID1(1+1); it is 4 in configuration of RAID5(4+P). In other words, if a RAID configuration is expressed as RAID5(n+P) or RAID10(n+n), "n" is equal to the number of data disks. (2) Specifications common to Configuration Settings (GUI and CLI)

Configuration Settings (GUI and CLI) process logical disk capacities in megabytes. According to "(1) Disk array specifications" and common specifications in combination, the capacity unit of logical disks to be bound is the lowest common multiple of "128KB × number of data disks" and "1MB (= 1024KB)" as shown in Table D-2.

Number of Data Disks	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Capacity Unit (MB)	1	3	1	5	3	7	1	9	5	11	3	13	7	15

Table D-2 Capacity Unit of Logical Disks to be Bound

If RAID such as RAID1, which does not use the striping feature, is in use, data is processed in megabytes. Thus, the capacity unit is "1". If a capacity is specified, the system recognizes it as the capacity that the user can use. In this case, logical disks are bound in the specified capacity + 2MB (disk management area).

(3) Specifications specific to Configuration Setting (GUI)

Configuration Setting (GUI) specifies a capacity in units of 0.1GB. The capacity is calculated with 0.1GB = 1024MB/10. In this case, obtain the capacity as follows:

- With Capacity Specification (Individual Setting): Specified capacity  $\times 1024 \rightarrow (\text{Decimal places rounded up})^{*1} \rightarrow (+2\text{MB})^{*2} \rightarrow (\text{Alignment})^{*3} \rightarrow \text{Capacity of LD to be bound}$
- With Disk Count Specification (Individual Setting):
   Free space in RANK/specified number of data disks → (Decimal places rounded up) → (Alignment)<sup>\*3</sup> → Capacity of LD to be bound
  - \*1: The value with decimal places being rounded up ensures that the specified capacity is allocated from the free space in a selected RANK. If the RANK does not contain free space large enough, logical disks cannot be bound.
  - \*2: A disk management area is added.
  - \*3: Alignment means obtaining a multiple (an outer value for Capacity Specification, and an inner value for Disk Count Specification) of the capacity (in megabytes) calculated from Table D-2.

 Examples of obtaining capacities of LD to be bound through Individual Setting of Configuration Setting (GUI)

The following are examples of capacities obtained by specifying a capacity or the number of data disks when logical disks are bound. Refer to D.3.3 "Method of Specifying Configuration Setting" for details on "Capacity Specification" and "Disk Count Specification".

Examples 1: Binding with Capacity Specification

- 1. Capacity obtained when logical disks are bound with 1.1GB specified for RAID5 (4+P):  $1.1GB \times 1024 = 1126.4MB \rightarrow (Decimal place rounded up) \rightarrow 1127MB \rightarrow (+2MB)^{*1} \rightarrow 1129MB \rightarrow (Alignment) \rightarrow 1129MB$
- 2. Capacity obtained when logical disks are bound with 1.1GB specified for RAID5 (3+P):  $1.1GB \times 1024 = 1126.4MB \rightarrow (Decimal place rounded up) \rightarrow 1127MB \rightarrow (+2MB)^{*1} \rightarrow 1129MB \rightarrow (Alignment) \rightarrow 1131MB$ 
  - \*1: Logical disks are bound in the user-specified capacity + 2MB as the disk array management area.

Examples 2: Binding with Disk Count Specification

- Capacity obtained when three logical disks are bound with 266.7GB as the capacity of RAID5 (4+P):
   266.7GB × 1024/3 = 91033.6MB → (Decimal place rounded down) → 91033MB → (Alignment)<sup>\*1</sup> → 91033MB<sup>\*2</sup>
- Capacity obtained when three logical disks are bound with 200GB as the capacity of RAID5 (3+P):
   200GB × 1024/3 = 68266.66MB → (Decimal places rounded down) → 68266MB → (Alignment)<sup>\*1</sup> → 68265MB<sup>\*2</sup>
  - \*1: The capacity unit is aligned according to Table D-2. In RAID5, (13+P) is the greatest, and the maximum value (MB as the capacity unit) is 13MB.
  - \*2: The capacity of the bound logical disks includes 2MB as the disk array management area.

Note that the logical disk capacity displayed by the iSM is that available to the user, not the total capacity including the disk array management area.

## D.3.2 Detailed Combination of RAID Configuration

This disk array series defines that the capacity unit of logical disks to be bound depends on the RAID configuration. Therefore, RV may not be bound in RAID configuration different from that of MV. Table D-3 shows the combinations of RAID configurations in which RV having the same capacity as for MV can be bound.

			Number of RV Data Disks*													
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	1	$\odot$	$\odot$	Δ	$\odot$	Δ	Δ	$\Delta$	$\odot$	$\Delta$	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ
	2	$\odot$	$\odot$	Δ	$\odot$	$\Delta$	Δ	Δ	$\odot$	$\Delta$	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ
	3	0	0	$\odot$	0	Δ	$\odot$	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	$\odot$	Δ	Δ	Δ
iks	4	٥	٥	Δ	٥	Δ	Δ	Δ	٥	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ
Dis	5	0	0	Δ	0	•	Δ	Δ	0	Δ	٥	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ
ata	6	0	0	٥	0	Δ	٥	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	٥	Δ	Δ	Δ
Ď	7	0	0	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	٥	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	٥	Δ
MV	8	•	•	Δ	•	Δ	Δ	Δ	•	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ
ofl	9	0	0	0	0	Δ	0	Δ	0	•	Δ	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	Δ
)er	10	0	0	Δ	0	•	Δ	Δ	0	Δ	٥	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ
ımt	11	0	0	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ
ž	12	0	0	•	0	Δ	•	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	•	Δ	Δ	Δ
	13	0	0	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	•	Δ	Δ
	14	0	0	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	$\odot$	0	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	Δ	$\odot$	Δ
	15	0	0	0	0	۲	0	Δ	0	Δ	0	Δ	0	Δ	Δ	$\odot$

Table D-3 Correspondence between the Numbers of MV and RV Data Disks in Each RAID Configuration

\*: The number of data disks is the number of physical disks, which are used to save data in RAID configuration. The number of data disks is 1 in configuration of RAID1(1+1); it is 4 in configuration of RAID5(4+P). In other words, if RAID is expressed as RAID0(n), RAID5(n+P), or RAID10(n+n), "n" is equal to the number of data disks shown in Table D-3.

#### [How to read the table]

The table shows RAID configurations (depending on the number of data disks in actual operation) in which RV having the same capacity as for MV can be bound. The symbols in the table are as follows:

- ●: RV can be bound.
- O: Configuration Setting (GUI) may be unable to bind RV depending on the MV capacity. In this case, use Configuration Setting (CLI) to bind RV.
- Δ: Both Configuration Setting (GUI) and Configuration Setting (CLI) may be unable to bind RV depending on the MV capacity.

Examples:

- With MV bound in configuration of RAID5(4+P) Configuration Setting (GUI) can bind RV in configuration of RAID1, RAID5(2+P, 4+P, 8+P), RAID10(2+2, 4+4), or RAID0(1).
- With MV bound in configuration of RAID5(6+P) Configuration Setting (GUI) can bind RV in configuration of RAID0(3), RAID5(3+P, 6+P, 12+P), or RAID10(3+3, 6+6). Configuration Setting (CLI) can bind RV in configuration of RAID1, RAID5(2+P, 4+P, 8+P), or RAID10(2+2, 4+4).

# D.3.3 Method of Specifying Configuration Setting

There are two methods (Batch Setting and Individual Setting) for binding logical disks through Configuration Setting (GUI). Each method includes another three specification methods "Disk Count Specification", "Capacity Specification", and "Disk Count and Capacity Specification". There are six specification methods in total.

As a rule, bind RV by the same specification method as when binding MV. Table D-4 shows the combinations of specification methods.

	PV		Batch Setting			Individual Setting	3
MV		Disk Count Specification	Capacity Specification	Disk Count and Capacity Specification	Disk Count Specification	Capacity Specification	Disk Count and Capacity Specification
	Disk Count Specification	0	×	×	×	×	×
Batch	Capacity Specification	×	0	0	×	0	0
Setting	Disk Count and Capacity Specification	×	0	0	×	0	0
	Disk Count Specification	×	×	×	0	×	×
Individual	Capacity Specification	×	0	0	×	0	0
Setting	Disk Count and Capacity Specification	×	0	0	×	0	0

Table D-4 Combinations of Specification Methods

#### [How to read the table]

The table shows the combinations of specification methods that can bind RV having the same capacity as for MV. The symbols in the table are as follows:

- O: RV can be bound.
- ×: RV cannot be bound.

If there is difference between capacities obtained by the combinations of specification methods in Table D-4, the capacity of a logical disk varies depending on the specification method. Table D-5 shows the capacities of bound logical disks for each specification method.

Setting Method	Specification Method	How to Obtain Capacity	Capacity Unit
Batch	Disk Count Specification	Divide the recommended maximum capacity*2, which is within the RANK capacity, by the number of data disks.	1MB
Setting	Capacity Specification <sup>*1</sup>	Specified capacity	0.1GB*3
	Disk Count and Capacity Specification <sup>*1</sup>	Specified capacity	0.1GB <sup>*3</sup>
Individual	Disk Count Specification	Divide the RANK capacity by the number of data disks.	1MB
Setting	Capacity Specification <sup>*1</sup>	Specified capacity	0.1GB <sup>*3</sup>
	Disk Count and Capacity Specification <sup>*1</sup>	Specified capacity	0.1GB <sup>*3</sup>

 Table D-5
 Bound LD Capacity by Specification Method

\*1: For "Disk Count and Capacity Specification", Capacity has a higher priority than Disk Count. Thus, the capacity of the bound logical disk is the same as when it is obtained by "Capacity Specification".

\*2: Recommended capacity =  $2128MB \times n (n = 1, 2, 3, ...)$ 

If the RANK capacity is 266.7GB (= 273100.8MB), the recommended capacity is 2128MB × 128 = 272384MB.

\*3: A capacity must be specified in units of 0.1GB (0.1GB = 1024MB/10).

Examples 1: Binding with Capacity Specification

- Capacity obtained when logical disks are bound with 1.1GB specified for RAID5 (4+P): Both Batch Setting and Individual Setting can bind logical disks of the same capacity.
   1.1GB × 1024 = 1126.4MB → (Decimal place rounded up) → 1127MB → (+2MB)\* → 1129MB → (Alignment) → 1129MB
- Capacity obtained when logical disks are bound with 1.1GB specified for RAID5 (3+P): Only Individual Setting can bind logical disks in configuration of RAID5 (3+P).
  1.1GB × 1024 = 1126.4MB → (Decimal place rounded up) → 1127MB → (+2MB)\* → 1129MB → (Alignment) → 1131MB
- \*: Logical disks are bound in the user-specified capacity + 2MB as the disk array management area.

Examples 2: Binding with Disk Count Specification

 Capacity obtained when three logical disks are bound with 266.7GB as the RANK capacity of RAID5 (4+P): Batch Setting and Individual Setting bind the logical disks of different capacities. (With Batch Setting)
 266.7GB × 1024 = 273100.8MB > 2128MB×n → 2128MB×128 → 272384MB →
 272384MB/3 = 90794.66MB → (Decimal places rounded down) → 90794MB → (Alignment)
 → 90794MB\*<(With Individual Setting)</li>
 266.7GB × 1024/3 = 91033.6MB → (Decimal place rounded down) → 91033MB →
 (Alignment) → 91033MB\* Capacity obtained when three logical disks are bound with 200GB as the capacity of RAID5 (3+P): Only Individual Setting can bind logical disks in configuration of RAID5 (3+P).
 200GB × 1024/3 = 68266.66MB → (Decimal places rounded down) → 68266MB → (Alignment) →68265MB\*

\*: The capacity of the bound logical disks includes 2MB as the disk array management area.

Examples 3) Binding with Disk Count and Capacity Specification

- Capacity obtained when logical disks are bound with 1.1GB specified for RAID5 (4+P): Both Batch Setting and Individual Setting can bind three logical disks of the same capacity.
   1.1GB × 1024 = 1126.4MB → (Decimal place rounded up) → 1127MB → (+2MB)\* → 1129MB → (Alignment) → 1129MB
- Capacity obtained when logical disks are bound with 1.1GB specified for RAID5 (3+P): Only Individual Setting can bind logical disks in configuration of RAID5 (3+P). Three logical disks of the same capacity can be bound.
  1.1GB × 1024 = 1126.4MB → (Decimal place rounded up) → 1127MB → (+2MB)\* → 1129MB → (Alignment) → 1131MB
  - \*: Logical disks are bound in the user-specified capacity + 2MB as the disk array management area.

# Appendix E Logical Disk Used Capacity

The list below shows the difference between the pool used capacity and the logical disk capacity on the 100/1000/2000 series disk array (not including S400/S1400/S2400):

Disk Array Series Name	Logical Disk Capacity	Pool/RANK Used Capacity
100/1000/2000	User available capacity + 2 MB + $\alpha$	Equal to disk capacity
400/1400/2400/2800	User available capacity + 2 MB	Specified capacity + 2 MB + $\alpha$

The relation (formula for calculating the relation) between the pool used capacity and the associated logical disk capacity depends on the pool type:

#### 1. Dynamic pool

The minimum unit of assigning an area in a dynamic pool is 256 MB, and the 2-MB control region is secured in another place. Therefore, when the number of disks is 128 or less, the amount of the control region secured in the pool is 256 MB, and when the number of disks is between 129 and 256, it is 512 MB.

#### (1) Formula

Use the following formula to calculate the pool used capacity when the capacity of logical disks (user available capacity) required is X (MB) and the number of logical disks is Y:

Pool used capacity = ([(X - 1)/256] + 1) × 256 × Y + ([(Y - 1)/128] + 1) × 256 (X,Y > 0)

[X] is a gaussian which represents an integer below X.

#### (2) Examples

When you bind one 2.0-GB logical disk, the pool used capacity required is:

 $([(2048 - 1)/256] + 1) \times 256 \times 1 + ([(1 - 1)/128] + 1) \times 256 = 2048 + 256 = 2304 \text{ MB}$ 

When you bind one logical disk with the recommended capacity 2.0 GB, the pool used capacity required is:

 $([(2126 - 1)/256] + 1) \times 256 \times 1 + ([(1 - 1)/128] + 1) \times 256 = 2304 + 256 = 2560 \text{ MB}$ 

#### (3) List of samples

No. of Logical Disks	Capacity	Pool Used Capacity
1	2.0 GB	2.25 GB (2.2 GB on iSM)
129	2.0 GB	258.50 GB (258.5 GB on iSM)
1	Recommended capacity 2.0 GB	2.50 GB (2.5 GB on iSM)
129	Recommended capacity 2.0 GB	290.75 GB (290.7 GB on iSM)

#### (4) Supplementary explanation

For the capacity of logical disks you can bind in unused space, it depends on how many logical disks are in the pool.

For example, when you bind 127 logical disks and if there is a pool whose unused space is 2.0 GB, you can locate one 2.0-GB logical disk in the pool, but you cannot locate two 1.0-GB logical disks; because the control region already assigned is used for the 128 logical disks, but a 256-MB new control region is required for 129-th and later logical disks.

#### 2. Basic pool

A basic pool consists of multiple partitions in a RAID configuration, and the partitions are assigned by units of 1 MB. Therefore, because the partitions need to be equally used on area assignment to logical disks, the capacity occupied is a multiple of the number of partitions multiplied by 1 MB.

RAID1	-	1 partition
RAID5	-	1 partition
RAID10 (4 PDs)	-	2 partitions
RAID10 (8 PDs)	-	4 partitions
RAID10 (16 PDs)	-	8 partitions
RAID50 (10 PDs)	-	2 partitions
RAID50 (20 PDs)	-	4 partitions

#### (1) Formula

Use the following formula to calculate the pool used capacity when the logical disk capacity (user available capacity) required is X (MB) and the number of RAID partitions is N:

 $Y = (X + 2) \mod N$ 

When Y = 0,

Pool used capacity = X + 2

When Y > 0,

Pool used capacity = X + 2 + N - Y

A mode N is a congruence representing the remainder of A divided by N.

#### (2) Examples

When you bind 1.0-GB logical disks with RAID10 (16 PDs):

 $Y = (1024 + 2) \mod 8 = 2$ 

Pool used capacity = 1024 + 2 + 8 - 2 = 1032 MB

When you bind 1.0-GB logical disks with RAID10 (8 PDs):

 $Y = (1024 + 2) \mod 4 = 2$ Pool used capacity = 1024 + 2 + 4 - 2 = 1028 MB

When you bind 1.0-GB logical disks with RAID5 (10 PDs):

 $Y = (1024 + 2) \mod 2 = 0$ Pool used capacity = 1024 + 2 = 1026 MB

Note that the logical disk capacity is the same in the respective cases but the pool used capacity is not.
# Appendix F Batch Setup File

# F.1 Nickname Setting File

You can collectively set nicknames using the nickname setting file. The following shows the format of the nickname setting file and a setting sample.

(a) Formatting the user definition file

The format for batch setting the disk array name, LD type/name and the port name from the user definition file is described below.

The user definition file contains a line starting with "#" or ";" to be handled as a comment line.

[User definition file format for batch setup]

```
# Comment line
rmon name list
                  (A)
[array]
                  (B)
Target disk array name and new disk array name
                                                      (C), (D)
                  (E)
[ld]
nnnnh, new LD type and new LD name
                                             (F)
                  :
                  (G)
[port]
                                (H)
mmh-ssh, and new port name
                  :
                  (B)
[arrav]
                  :
```

(A) Key information (File identification info)

Describes "rmon name list" as the key information indicating that the following parameter is the name setting file.

(B) Key information (Disk array)

Describes key information for specifying the name of the target disk array. The information following the [array] key is valid for the disk array name specified by the [array] key until the next [array] key appears.

Only one disk array name can be set by using one [array] key. To set multiple disk array names, an [array] key is required for each disk array name. If multiple disk array names are specified by using one [array] key, only the first disk array name is valid.

When an invalid disk array name is specified, the settings are invalid until the next [array]

35

key.

(C) Target disk array Name

Describes the disk array name (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) targeted by the following parameter, to continue from the key information [array].

(D) New disk array Name

Describes the disk array name to set following the target disk array + ', (comma)' when executing the disk array name setting. It is unnecessary to specify this when the disk array name is not to be set (i.e., when changing only the LD type/name or the port name).

Describing a name in excess of 32 characters for the disk array name will end in error.

(E) Key information (LD)

Describes [ld] as the key information indicating that the following parameter is the setup information for LDs. (The information following [ld] is valid until the next [array] or [ld] appears.)

(F) New LD Type/Name

Sets the format and LD names for the LDs in the target disk array ((c) above) described before describing this parameter. Describes "nnnnh (nnnn: LD number in four hexadecimal digits)" as the ID information of the target LDs. Describes the newly set format (refer to Table 15-1), ", (comma)" and LD name to continue from ", (comma)".

Describing a name in excess of 24 characters for the LD name will end in error.

When making settings for other LDs in the same disk array, describe the information to be set in the same format on the succeeding line.

.....

# **(**

On the ACOS-4 system, make sure that the LD identifier name matches the LD name on the host.

(G) Key information (port)

Describes [port] as the key information indicating that the following parameter is the setup information related to ports. (The information following [port] is valid until [array] or [ld] appears.)

(H) New Port Name

Г

Sets the names for the ports in the target disk array ((C) above) described before describing this parameter. Describes "mmh-ssh (mm: director number in two hexadecimal digits; ss: port number in two hexadecimal digits)" as the ID information of the ports. Describes the newly set port name to continue from ", (comma)".

Describing a name in excess of 32 characters for the new port name will end in error. When making settings for other ports in the same disk array, describe the information to be set in the same format on the succeeding line.

[An example of the user definition file for batch setting in initial introduction]

rmon name list	
[array] 300000000000003,Array001	Set the disk array name of 300000000000003 to Array001. The following indicate the name settings for this disk array.
[ld]	
0000h,WN,DBmaster001	Set the format of the LD number 0000h to WN, and the LD name to DBmaster001.
	The same applies to the following.
0001h,WN,DBmaster002	
0002h,NX,DBmaster003	
0003h,NX,DBmaster004	
0004h,NX,DBmaster005	
0005h,WN,DBmaster006	
0006h,WN,DBmaster007	
0007h,NX,DBmaster008	
[port]	
04h-00h,DBServer01	Set the port name of the port number 04-001 to DBServer01.
04h-01h,DBServer02	The same applies to the following.
06h-00h,DBServer03	
06h-01h,DBServer04	

[An example of the user definition file for batch setting after start of operation]

```
rmon name list
[array]
Array001 Indicates that the disk array to be set
is Array001.
[1d]
0000h,WN,DBtest001 Set the format of the LD number to 0000h
to WN, and the LD name to DBtest001.
The same applies to the following.
0011h,NX,DBtest002
```

# F.2 Pair Setting File

A pair setting file enables you to pair logical disks collectively and register AT-groups collectively. The following shows the format of the pair setting file and a setting sample.

### (1) Pair setting file format

- (1) A pair setting file is a text file (\*.txt, \*.csv) in ASCII character format.
- (2) Data from a semicolon (;) or sharp (#) to the end of the line is processed as comments.
- (3) Uppercase and lowercase characters are distinguished. Be careful in writing characters.
- (4) Write "Pair Name List" in the first line except comment lines.
- (5) In the lines following "Pair Name List", specify the items for pair setting in the format below.

"MV DiskArrayName", "MV Vol Type", "MV Vol Name", ["RV DiskArrayName"], "RV Vol Type", "RV Vol Name"[,]

(Items enclosed in brackets [] can be omitted.)

<SYNTAX>

MV DiskArrayName

- Specify the name of the disk array to which Master Volume (MV) belongs.
- The disk array name can be specified with up to 32 characters.

MV Vol Type

• Specify the type of Master Volume.

MV Vol Name

- Specify the logical disk name of Master Volume.
- The logical disk name can be specified with up to 24 characters.
- RV DiskArrayName
  - Specify the name of the disk array to which Replication Volume (RV) belongs.
  - The disk array name can be specified with up to 32 characters.
  - If omitted, the system assumes that RV belongs to the disk array of MV.

RV Vol Type

• Specify the type of Replication Volume.

RV Vol Name

- Specify the logical disk name of Replication Volume.
- The logical disk name can be specified with up to 24 characters.
- (6) To create an AT-group, write "[atcreate]".
- (7) Specify the [atcreate] items in the following format:

"ATgroupName","DiskArrayName"

<SYNTAX>

ATgroupName

- Specify the name of the AT-group to be created.
- The At-group name can be specified with up to 32 characters.

## 39

DiskArrayName

- Specify the name of the disk array in which the AT-group is created.
- The disk array name can be specified with up to 32 characters.
- (8) To register volumes to the AT-group created, write "[atadd]".
- (9) Specify the [atadd] items in the following format:
  - "ATgroupName", "MV Vol Type", "MV Vol Name"

<SYNTAX>

#### ATgroupName

- Specify the name of the AT-group to which the volume is created.
- The AT-group name can be specified with up to 32 characters.
- MV Vol Type
  - Specify the format of the master volume to be registered.
- MV Vol Name
  - Specify the logical disk name of the master volume to be registered.
  - The logical disk name can be specified with up to 24 characters.
- (10) To delete volumes already registered to an AT-group, write "[atremove]".
- (11) Specify the [atremove] items in the same manner as [atadd]."ATgroupName", "MV Vol Type", "MV Vol Name"
- (12) To delete an AT-group, write "[atdelete]".
- (13) Specify the [atdelete] items in the following format:
  - "ATgroupName"
  - <SYNTAX>

ATgroupName

- Specify the name of the AT-group be deleted.
- The AT-group name can be specified with up to 32 characters.

## (2) Pair setting sample

Pair Name List ;MV DiskArrayName, MV Vol Type, MV Vol. Name, RV DiskArrayNam	(a) e,RV Vol
Type, RV VolName	(b)
#MV DiskArravName, MV Vol Type, MV Vol. Name, RV DiskArravNam	e, RV Vol
Type, RV VolName	(b)
DiskArravName1,NX,DEV001, DiskArravName1,NX,DEV101	(c)
DiskArravName1.NX, DEV001, DiskArravName2.NX, DEV202	(c)
DiskArravName1.NX.DEV002. DiskArravName2.NX.DEV203	
DiskArravName1.NX.DEV003. DiskArravName3.NX.DEV301	
DiskArravName1.NX.DEV004. DiskArravName3.NX.DEV302	
DiskArravName1.NX.DEV011NX.DEV021	(d)
[atcreate]	(e)
#ATgroupName, DiskArrayName	(b)
DB atg1.DiskArravName1	(f)
[atadd]	(n)
#ATgroupName.OSTvpe.ExVolName	(b)
$DB_{atg1}$ . NX, DEV001	(h)
$DB_atg1.NX.DEV002$	(h)
[atcreate]	··· (11)
#ATgroupName DiskArrayName	(b)
DR atg2 DiskArrayName1	(f)
[atadd]	( _ )
#ATarounName OSTVDe ExVolName	(b)
$DB_{ata2} NX DEV003$	(h)
$DB_atg2$ NX $DEV003$	(h)
Pair Name List	··· (11)
	(i)
#ATarounName OSTUDe ExVolName	(h)
DB at a1 NY DEV001	··· (5)
DB_atg1_NX_DEV001	···(j)
	•••(J)
#ATaroupNamo	(h)
PR atg1	(1)
	···(⊥)
#ATGROUPNAMA OSTUPA ENVelNama	··· (⊥)
#AIGLOUPNAME, OSTYPE, EXVOLNAME	··· (b)
DB_atg2, NA, DEV003	•••(j)
	•••(J) (k)
[acuerece] #λΨαroupNamo	•••(K)
TAIGTORDIANC	(u)
DD_aly2	•••(⊥)

<Explanation>

- If the first line except the comment line does not contain this character string, an error (a) ("[05254] It is not a file for Batch Setting.") is posted.
- A line starting with a semicolon (;) or sharp (#) in a CSV-format text file is processed as a (b) comment line. Use a comment line mainly as the title of an item.
- If pairing a single MV with multiple RVs, create a line for each pair. (c)
- (d) If the disk array name of RV is omitted, the system assumes that the RV belongs to the disk array of the MV.
- (e) Declare creation of an AT-group.
- (f) Create an AT-group on the specified disk array.
- Declare registration of volumes to the AT-group. (g)
- Each specified volume must be a PV (Primary Volume) and set for one RDR pair. In (h) addition, when you register multiple volumes to an AT-group, the volumes need to be located on the same disk array. RDR pair volumes (RVs) set for registered volumes are also need to be located on the same disk array.
- Declare deletion of a volume from an AT-group. (i)
- Specify a volume registered to a specified AT-group. (j)
- (k) Declare deletion of an AT-group.

(1) Delete all volumes registered to the AT-group you are going to delete.

⚠	
(1) Use a half-size space between characters.	
(2) Do not enter a space preceding or following a character string.	
(3) If the file does not begin with "Pair Name List", except for comment lines, an	error ("[05254] It
is not a file for Batch Setting.") occurs.	
(4) If a character string is preceded by a space or followed by a space, an error ("	[05254] It is not a
file for Batch Setting.") is posted.	
(5) Any AT-group name that does not conform to the following rules is invalid:	
• Number of available characters 1 to 32 characters	
• Available characters Alphabet: A to Z (a to z)	
* Upper- and lower-case characters	are distinguished.
Numerals: 0 to 9	
Underbar: _	
Slash: /	
* All the characters must be 1-byte characters.	

# Appendix G ACOS-4 Resource Operation Guard

It is allowed only for our maintenance personnel to specify ACOS-4 resource settings. If you need to handle ACOS-4 resources, be sure to ask our maintenance personnel first.

To protect ACOS-4 against system destruction, the work involved in setting the resources used by ACOS-4 is defined as tasks to be carried out by maintenance personnel. On the other hand, the open system resources are allowed to be set by general users, giving priority to the freedom of work in such cases as changing the settings. Note, however, that a mistake or other inappropriate operation that the general user makes when setting the Access Control in the WWN mode or in the GUI-based Port mode, which has been supported for the disk array which applies program product "AccessControl" beginning with Version 2.1, can result in the destruction of the ACOS-4 system.

Starting with Version 2.2, a reinforced guard function has been deployed that guards against Access-Control-related operation's that can lead to the destruction of the ACOS-4 system. Whenever an operation related to the ACOS-4 resources is requested, a dialog appears indicating that the operations for the ACOS-4 resources by general users are restricted and that a consultation with maintenance personnel is required.

iSM	×
	[25300] It is going to perform operation about ACOS-4 resources. Since the operation about ACOS-4 resources is special, a setup of a general user has been restricted. Please consult with a maintenance engineer, when you carry out operation about ACOS-4 resources.
	About ACOS-4 resources. The logical disk from os type A4. The port where the logic disk of form os type A4 was set up. The port of a platform A4. LD set with which the port of a platform A4 was set up. LD set of a platform A4.
	()

Figure G-1 ACOS-4 Resource Operation Warning Dialog

### (1) ACOS-4 resources

- (a) Logical disk of the "A4" type
- (b) Port including any logical disk of the "A4" type And all logical disks assigned to that port
- (c) Port of the "A4" platform

And all logical disks assigned to that port

(d) LD Set including any port of the "A4" platform

And all logical disks and ports assigned to that LD Set

(e) LD Set of the "A4" platform

And all logical disks and ports assigned to that LD Set

#### (2) Operations related to the ACOS-4 resources

The operations related to the ACOS-4 resources are special, and general users are restricted from performing them. If any operation related to the ACOS-4 resources is required, consult maintenance personnel.



# (3) Functions and operations subject to the ACOS-4 resource operation guard

Function	Function Details	Guarded Operation
Configuration	Bind logical disk	Setting "A4" as the logical disk type
setting	Set/change	Setting "A4" as the logical disk type
	logical disk type	Changing the logical disk type from "A4"
	Set/change port	Setting "A4" as the port platform.
	platform	Changing the port platform type from "A4"
Access Control	Create/delete LD	Creating an LD Set of the "A4" platform
	Set	Deleting an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Deleting an LD Set including any port of the "A4" platform
	Change LD Set	Changing an LD Set of the "A4" platform
	name	Changing the platform of the LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
	Add logical disk to LD Set	Adding a logical disk of the "A4" type to an LD Set
		Adding a logical disk to an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Adding a logical disk to an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
	Delete logical disk from LD Set	Deleting a logical disk of the "A4" type from an LD Set
		Deleting a logical disk from an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Deleting a logical disk from an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
	Connect WWPN link to LD Set	Connecting a WWPN link to an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Connecting a WWPN link to an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
	Disconnect WWPN link from	Disconnecting a WWPN link from an LD Set of the "A4" platform
	LD Set	Disconnecting a WWPN link from an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform

Table G-1	List of Functions and O	perations Sub	ject to the ACOS-4	Resource O	peration Guard (	(1/2)	)
-----------	-------------------------	---------------	--------------------	------------	------------------	-------	---

Function	Function Details	Guarded Operation
Access Control	Connect port link to LD Set	Connecting a port link of the "A4" platform to an LD Set
		Connecting a port link to an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Connecting a port link to an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
	Disconnect port link from LD Set	Disconnecting a port link of the "A4" platform from an LD Set
		Disconnecting a port link from an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Disconnecting a port link from an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
	Change port	Changing the mode of a port of the "A4" platform
	mode	Changing the mode of a port assigned a logical disk the "A4" type
		Changing the mode of a port linked to an LD Set of the "A4" platform
LD Administrator	Add logical disk	Adding a logical disk of the "A4" type to an LD Set
	to LD Set	Adding a logical disk to an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Adding a logical disk to an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
	Move logical disk to preserve	Moving a logical disk of the "A4" type to a preserve group from an LD Set
	group from LD Set	Moving a logical disk to a preserve group from an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Moving a logical disk to a preserve group from an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
	Move logical disk to reserve	Moving a logical disk of the "A4" type to a reserve group from an LD Set
	group from LD Set	Moving a logical disk to a reserve group from an LD Set of the "A4" platform
		Moving a logical disk to a reserve group from an LD Set including a port of the "A4" platform
Configuration	Set/change	Setting "A4" as the logical disk type
display/state	logical disk type	Changing the logical disk type to "A4"
client main window)		Setting/changing the type of a logical disk assigned to a port of the "A4" platform
		Changing the type of a logical disk assigned to an LD Set of the "A4" platform

 Table G-1
 List of Functions and Operations Subject to the ACOS-4 Resource Operation Guard (2/2)

 E
 E

 E
 E

46

# Index

# *1* 100 series......I-3, I-5, I-10, I-14, I-15 1000 series.....I-3, I-5, I-10, I-14, I-15 *2*

2000	series	I-3, I-5, I-6, I-9
2800	series	I-2, I-5, I-6, I-8, I-11

#### 3

3000 series.....I-2, I-5, I-7

### 4

4000 series..... I-2, I-4, I-6, I-7

### A

A2	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186
A4	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127
Access Control setting	
access management	
AccessControl I-32	2, IV-28, IV-57, IV-107, IV-119,
IV-183, IV-207, IV-2	09, IV-221
AccessControl Installati	onII-2
accessible area	
accessible LD List	
ACOS-2	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186
ACOS-4	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127
adapter card	
AIX	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186
all selection	
alternative paths	
array	
array group	I-6
assigning logical disk	III-10, III-13, III-15, IV-3, IV-5
auto assignment	
auto repair	IV-136
AX	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186

## B

back board	I-16, I-17
basic cabinet	I-2, I-6, I-16
basic pool I-18, I-23, IV-7, IV-1	0, IV-92, IV-95, 33
batch binding	IV-62
batch binding logical disks	IV-62
battery	I-16

BC	I-6
binding a pool	IV-7, IV-8, IV-62
binding logical disk	III-7
binding logical disks	IV-35, IV-62
binding pool or RANK	III-7
binding time	IV-50
binding/expanding pool or RANK	III-5
business server I-35, I-37	7, I-38, I-39, IV-201

### С

cache memory I-16
cache module I-16
cache partitioning function2
candidate LD list IV-216
capacity IV-95
capacity expansion IV-2, IV-4, IV-108, IV-109
capacity of the logical disksIV-42, IV-70, IV-72
capacity unit disagreementIV-45, IV-73, IV-117
change format time IV-3, IV-4
Change Format Time IV-120
Change of Logical Disk ConfigurationIII-7
change ownershipIV-3, IV-4, IV-117
change pool expansion timeIV-2, IV-4
change pool rebuild timeIV-2, IV-4
change port mode IV-183, IV-220
change rebuild timeIV-2, IV-4, IV-110
changing AccessControl configuration III-5, III-6, III-7
changing time to bind logical disks IV-60
clusteredI-33
community name IV-166
componentI-2, I-3, I-4, I-16, I-17
configuration settingII-2
configuration tree view IV-92
control region
control volumeIV-35, IV-39
controller I-3, I-4, I-6, I-16, IV-117, IV-129, IV-140
copy the network setup information IV-168
creating LD Set III-10, III-13, III-15
cross call IV-117, IV-129, IV-140, IV-172
CSV format IV-175
CX IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186

### D

data replication	.III-4, III-6, III-9, IV-34
data replication function	IV-116
DE	IV-125
deassigning logical disk	III-8, III-15
deleting LD Set	III-15
detailed information view	IV-92
disk array	
disk array name I-30, I	IV-154, IV-155, IV-156,
IV-158, IV-167, 35, 36, 37	
disk array name setting	IV-154, IV-156, 36
disk array subsystem informatio	n IV-154, IV-156
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

disk arrays with pool	I-18
disk control region	IV-21, IV-40, IV-68, 21
disk director	I-4, I-16
disk enclosure	I-2, I-3, I-4, I-17
display selection	IV-217
displaying segment state	IV-3, IV-5
double parity	
duplicated	I-33
dynamic pool I-19, I-24, IV-7	, IV-10, IV-64, IV-95, 32
DynamicDataReplication	I-2, I-3, I-16

# E

EC	I-6
excess of capacity	IV-45, IV-73, IV-117
expand LUN	IV-172
expanding a capcity of a pool	IV-21
expanding capacity of logical disks	IV-53
expansion method	IV-22
expansion time	IV-33, IV-109
extended cabinet	I-2, I-6, I-17

## F

failure (nnh)	IV-159
fan	I-16, I-17
file identification info	
format time	IV-118
formatting the user definition file	
free area list	IV-38
freeing logical disk	IV-3, IV-5

## G

get configuration information	IV-3, IV-5
get disk array info	IV-148, IV-152, IV-218
get log	IV-3, IV-5, IV-173
group	IV-216
group number	I-6
GUI	I-21

## Η

HBA	I-35, I-37, IV-188
high reliability	
high scalability	
host director	I-4, I-16
HP-UX	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186
huge capacity	IV-125

## I

inaccessible area	I-32
information about the pool	IV-24
initialization of logical disk	IV-3, IV-5
installation	III-2, III-3
Installing the Access Control	III-4
iSM server	IV-6

# J

junction boxI-1	5, I	[-1	7	1
-----------------	------	-----	---	---

## K

key information	IV	-158,	35
-----------------	----	-------	----

## L

large capacity	IV-125
LD	
LD Administrator Setting	IV-3, IV-5
LD batch bind	IV-128
LD batch binding IV-2,	IV-4, IV-63, IV-122
LD bind IV-3, IV-4, IV-34, IV	-91, IV-121, IV-129,
IV-143	
LD binding	.IV-35, IV-36, IV-93
LD capacity	IV-44, IV-80
LD individual bind	IV-8, IV-9, IV-84
LD information display	IV-3, IV-4
LD name I-30, IV-117, IV-12	6, IV-158, 36, 37, 38
LD number	IV-50
LD set IV-187, IV-195, IV-	201, IV-206, IV-210
LD setting	IV-3, IV-4, IV-116
LD type	IV-126
LD unbind	IV-3, IV-4, IV-119
LD window	IV-150
Level 1	IV-6
Level 2	IV-6
Level 3	IV-6
license	IV-3, IV-5
linking LD Set and path	III-10, III-13
Linux IV-49, IV	/-76, IV-127, IV-186
list view	IV-211, IV-216
logical configuration of a disk array	I-18
logical disk I-18, I-22, I-29, I	V-7, IV-121, IV-123
logical disk batch setting	IV-62
logical disk bind	III-5, 21
logical disk binding list screen	IV-91
logical disk capacity expansion	IV-3, IV-4
logical disk configuration screen	IV-94, IV-95
logical disk group	I-37
logical disk name	IV-48, IV-75
logical disk replication	I-3
logical disk tab	.IV-92, IV-93, IV-97
logical disk unbind	III-7, III-8
LÜN	IV-201, IV-211
LX IV-49, IV	/-76, IV-127, IV-186

## M

maintenance	I-16
manually repair	IV-136
mirroring	IV-129
modem	I-16
multi-RANK configuration	I-18, I-20, I-23, I-28

### N

NEC Storage 2800	
network setting	
nicknameI-3	0, I-31, IV-34, IV-153, IV-158
nickname batch setting	
nickname setting	
number	IV-76
number of LDsIV-4	41, IV-44, IV-69, IV-80, IV-96
number of logical disks	
number of PDs	IV-18, IV-23, IV-25, IV-96
number of pools	IV-64, IV-65, IV-79
number of RANKs	
number of spares	IV-64, IV-66, IV-80, IV-87
number of unused	
NX	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186

## 0

only specify LD capacity	IV-39, IV-67
only specify the number of LDs	IV-39, IV-67
OS Type	IV-48, IV-75
overview of Access Control	I-32
overview of AccessControl	III-2
ownership	IV-129

## Р

pair	IV-123, IV-158
pair settingIII	-4, III-6, III-9, IV-28, 39
panel	I-16
parameters	IV-2
parity	
parity disk	I-2, I-3
PD	
PD groupI-6, I-30	), IV-34, IV-141, IV-149
PD group number IV-124.	IV-128, IV-144, IV-149
PD groups	IV-124
physical disk I-4, I-6, I-17, I-	18, I-21, I-22, I-29, I-30,
III-5, IV-7, IV-62, IV-102, IV	7-104. IV-105. IV-106.
IV-108 IV-110 IV-111 IV-1	12 IV-121 IV-123
IV-125 IV-128 IV-129 IV-1	33 IV-136 IV-144
IV-145 IV-146 IV-147 IV-1	49 17 19
nhysical disk information displa	$V = IV_2 IV_4$
physical disk tab	$V_02 V_03 V_03$
physical disks	IV 100
platform	IV 196
platform setting	
dynamic	
poolI-	.17, 1-18, 1-22, 1-29, 1-30
Pool and RANK	
pool bind	IV-2, IV-4, IV-34
pool binding	IV-93
pool binding wizard	IV-8, IV-9
pool capacity	IV-17, IV-65, IV-79
pool capacity expansion	IV-2, IV-4
pool information	IV-22, IV-32, IV-97
pool list	IV-37
pool name I-	-30, IV-15, IV-17, IV-95
pool number	IV-17
pool occupied capacity	
	· · · · · ·

-
,
,
ł
,
,
,
,
)
)
, ) ,
, , , , , , ,

## R

RAID I-29, IV-7,	IV-62, IV-65, IV-102, IV-105,
IV-121, IV-123, IV-125	7, 4, 13, 17
RAID type	
RAID0	
RAID1 IV-7, IV-10	02, IV-121, IV-125, IV-129, 12
RAID10	IV-102
RAID5 IV-7, IV	/-102, IV-121, IV-125, IV-129
RAID50	IV-7
RAID6	I-2, I-3, IV-7
RANK	I-18, I-22, I-29, I-30
RANK bind	IV-2, IV-4, IV-185
RANK Bind	IV-103
RANK information	IV-125
RANK information displa	vIV-2. IV-4
RANK type	
RANK unbind	IV-2. IV-4
RANK window	
RANK/spare Setting	IV-2 IV-4
rebuild start instruction	IV-2 IV-4 IV-111 IV-112
IV-136	
rebuild time	IV-17, IV-32, IV-105, IV-113
redundancy	I-3
reference mode	IV-5
RemoteDataReplication	I-2, I-16
renaming a logical disk	
renaming a pool	IV-29
replicate logical disks	I-2
replication batch setting	IV-2. IV-4
replication volume	I_32
rmon name list	35
RPI	IV-211 IV-216

## S

selecting a pool	IV-37
selecting physical disks	IV-13, IV-86
selecting the pool type	IV-10
selecting unused areas	IV-38
selection PD for expansion	IV-23
serial number	IV-154

set a pair IV-34		
set pool nameIV-2, IV-4		
setting access control IV-220		
setting cache segment IV-3, IV-5		
setting disk arrayIII-10		
setting of a service processor7		
setting port name IV-154, IV-156		
setting spare IV-125		
setting the port access mode III-10, III-11, III-14		
setting/changing the link between LD Set and path		

	III-15
Setting/Display Disk Array Network	IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Display Port Platform	IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Displaying Access Control	IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Displaying AccessControl	IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Displaying Auto Assignment	IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Displaying Cross Call	IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Displaying Disk Array Name	IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Displaying Disk Array Time	IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Displaying of Performance Optim	ization
	IV-3, IV-5

Setting/Displaying Port Name IV-3, IV-5
Setting/Displaying Spare Mode IV-3, IV-5
snapshot
snapshot threshold capacity IV-96
snapshot used capacity IV-96
Solaris IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186
space saving
spare I-30, IV-34, IV-92, IV-112, IV-125, IV-128,
IV-129, IV-133, IV-134, IV-136, IV-143, IV-144,
IV-145, IV-147, IV-148, IV-172
SpareI-30
spare bind IV-2, IV-4, IV-34, IV-133
spare bindingIV-84, IV-85, IV-93
spare list viewIV-100
spare unbindIV-2, IV-4, IV-134
spare unbinding IV-89
special setting
specifications
specify both the number of LDs and LD capacity
IV-39, IV-67
specify existing LD IV-42
Specify existing LD IV-70
specify expansion time IV-23
specify LD capacity IV-42
Specify LD capacity IV-70
specify recommend LD capacity IV-42
Specify recommend LD capacity IV-70
specifying the way of binding the logical disks
standard IV-125, IV-129
staring AccessControlIII-10
start access control IV-208, IV-220
start LD number IV-117
start of the iSMnetconf command4
Storage ManagerIII-3

striping	I-18, I-23, IV-129, 12, 14, 16, 17
success	IV-158
success (already)	
SVP	
system configuration	

# Т

temperature alarm	I-16, I-17
termination of the iSMnetcor	nf command6
text	IV-175
to pool	IV-13, IV-17, IV-23, IV-25
to spare	IV-86, IV-87
total LD capacity	IV-80
total pool	IV-65, IV-79
total RANK capacity	IV-129
total unused RANK capacity	IV-129
trap information button	IV-166
trap sense interval	IV-167
trap transmission place	IV-166
tree view	IV-209

## U

unbinding a pool	IV-26
unbinding logical disks	IV-56
unbinding pool or RANK	III-7, III-8
unlocking license	IV-3, IV-5
unused	IV-92
unused disk list view	IV-101
unused PD	IV-23, IV-86
used capacity	IV-95
user available region	IV-21, IV-40, IV-68
user definition file	IV-158
user level	IV-6

## V

virtual mediumI	[-1	8,	I-	2	2
-----------------	-----	----	----	---	---

### W

way of binding the logical	l disks IV-39
Windows	IV-49, IV-76, IV-127, IV-186
with pool rebuilding	IV-23
without pool rebuilding	IV-22
WN IV-49,	IV-76, IV-127, IV-186, 37, 38
WWN	I-35, I-36
WWN mode IV-28, IV	V-183, IV-188, IV-210, IV-213
WWNN	IV-188
WWPN	IV-188, IV-190, IV-191

Free Manuals Download Website <u>http://myh66.com</u> <u>http://usermanuals.us</u> <u>http://www.somanuals.com</u> <u>http://www.4manuals.cc</u> <u>http://www.4manuals.cc</u> <u>http://www.4manuals.cc</u> <u>http://www.4manuals.com</u> <u>http://www.404manual.com</u> <u>http://www.luxmanual.com</u> <u>http://aubethermostatmanual.com</u> Golf course search by state

http://golfingnear.com Email search by domain

http://emailbydomain.com Auto manuals search

http://auto.somanuals.com TV manuals search

http://tv.somanuals.com